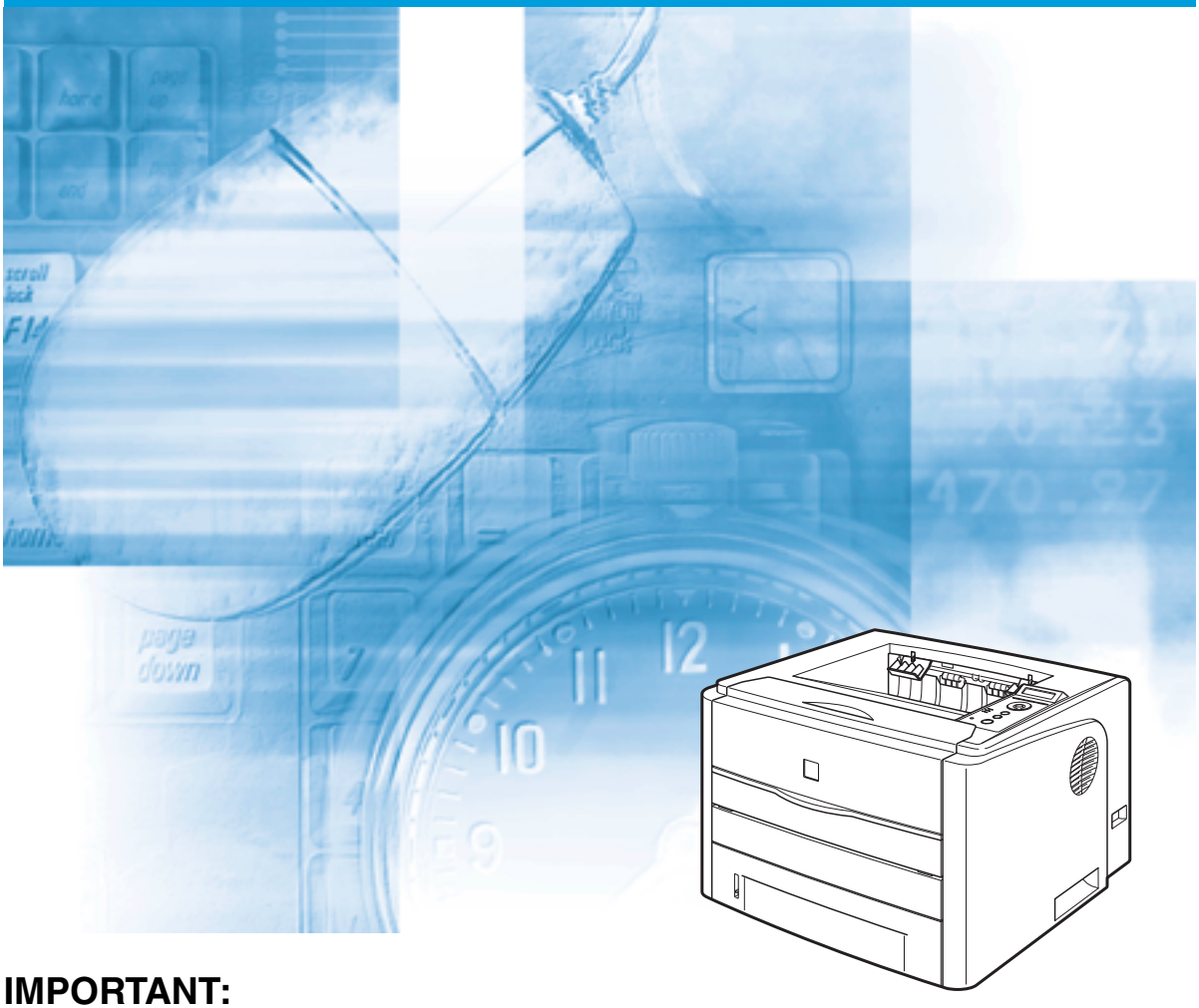
Canon

# LBP3360

Automatic Image Refinement

# User's Guide



**IMPORTANT:**

Read this manual carefully before using your printer.

Save this manual for future reference.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

ENG

# LBP3360
# Laser Printer
# User's Guide

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Manuals for the Printer

The manuals for this printer are arranged as follows. Please refer to them for detailed information.

Guides with this symbol are PDF manuals included on the accompanying CD-ROM.

- **Installation**
- **Connecting to a Computer**
- **Basic Operations**
- **Troubleshooting**

**User's Guide (This Manual)** CD-ROM

- **Installing the Printer Driver**
- **Printing a Document**
- **Using the Supplied Software**

**Driver Guide** CD-ROM

- **Setting Up the Network Environment for Printing**
- **Managing the Printer in the Network Environment**

**Network Guide** CD-ROM

- **Operating/Setting the Printer from the Web Browser**

**Remote UI Guide** CD-ROM

To view the manuals in PDF format, Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is required. If Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed on your system, please download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# How This Manual Is Organized


Chapter 1 Before You Start

Chapter 2 Installing the Printer

Chapter 3 Using the Printer

Chapter 4 Loading and Outputting Paper

Chapter 5 The Printing Environment

Chapter 6 Printing Environment Settings

Chapter 7 Routine Maintenance

Chapter 8 Troubleshooting

Chapter 9 Installing the Optional Accessories

Chapter 10 Appendix



Considerable effort has been made to ensure that this manual is free of inaccuracies and omissions. However, as we are constantly improving our products, if you need an exact specification, please contact Canon.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Contents

**Preface** . . . . . **viii**
**How To Use This Manual** . . . . . **viii**
Symbols Used in This Manual . . . . . viii
Keys and Buttons Used in This Manual . . . . . viii
Illustrations Used in This Manual . . . . . ix
Abbreviations Used in This Manual . . . . . x
**Legal Notices** . . . . . **xi**
EMC Directive (220 - 240 V model) . . . . . xi
Laser Safety (220 - 240 V model). . . . . xi
International Energy Star-Program . . . . . xii
WEEE Directive . . . . . xiii
License Notice . . . . . xiii
Trademarks. . . . . xiii
Copyright . . . . . xiv
Disclaimers. . . . . xv
Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images . . . . . xv
**Important Safety Instructions** . . . . . **xvi**
Installation . . . . . xvi
Power Supply . . . . . xviii
Handling . . . . . xix
Maintenance and Inspections . . . . . xx
Consumables . . . . . xxi
Others . . . . . xxi

## Chapter 1 Before You Start

**Features and Benefits** . . . . . **1-2**
**User Manual CD-ROM Menu** . . . . . **1-4**
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using The CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
**Parts and Their Functions** . . . . . **1-6**
Printer. . . . . 1-6
Front View . . . . . 1-6
Rear View . . . . . 1-7
Inner View . . . . . 1-8
Control Panel . . . . . 1-9
Display . . . . . 1-11
**Optional Accessories** . . . . . **1-12**
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Chapter 2 Installing the Printer


**Installation Procedure . . . . . 2-2**
**Environments . . . . . 2-3**
Installation Environment . . . . . 2-3
Temperature/Humidity Conditions . . . . . 2-3
Power Supply Requirements . . . . . 2-4
Installation Requirements . . . . . 2-4
Installation Space . . . . . 2-5
Required Peripheral Space . . . . . 2-5
Foot Positions . . . . . 2-6
**Confirming the Package Contents . . . . . 2-8**
**Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site . . . . . 2-10**
**Removing the Packing Materials . . . . . 2-14**
**Installing the Toner Cartridge . . . . . 2-19**
**Loading Paper . . . . . 2-20**
**Connecting the Cables . . . . . 2-21**
Connecting the Power Cord . . . . . 2-21
Connecting to a Computer . . . . . 2-23
Using a LAN Cable . . . . . 2-23
Using a USB Cable . . . . . 2-25
**Turning the Printer ON and Checking the Printer Operation . . . . . 2-28**
Turning the Printer ON . . . . . 2-28
Registering a Paper Size . . . . . 2-29
Checking the Operations with Configuration Page Print . . . . . 2-30
Printing Configuration Page Print . . . . . 2-30
Contents of Configuration Page Print . . . . . 2-31
When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly . . . . . 2-32
Changing the Language Used in the Display . . . . . 2-33
Turning the Printer OFF . . . . . 2-34


## Chapter 3 Using the Printer


**Power Saving (Power Save Mode) . . . . . 3-2**
**Online and Offline . . . . . 3-4**
Placing the Printer Online . . . . . 3-4
Placing the Printer Offline . . . . . 3-5
**Canceling a Job . . . . . 3-6**
Outputting Data (Forced Output) . . . . . 3-6
Canceling a Job (Cancel Job) . . . . . 3-7
Canceling the Process Currently Being Performed (Soft Reset) . . . . . 3-8
Canceling All the Jobs (Hard Reset) . . . . . 3-9




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Chapter 4 Loading and Outputting Paper


**Paper Requirements . . . . . 4-2**
Usable Paper . . . . . 4-2
Paper Size . . . . . 4-2
Paper Type . . . . . 4-3
Abbreviations of Paper Sizes . . . . . 4-6
Printable Area. . . . . 4-7
Unusable Paper . . . . . 4-8
Storing Paper . . . . . 4-9
Storing Printouts. . . . . 4-10
**Paper Source . . . . . 4-11**
Paper Source Type . . . . . 4-11
Paper Capacity for Paper Source . . . . . 4-12
Selecting a Paper Source. . . . . 4-12
Precautions for Handling the Manual Feed Slot or Paper Cassette . . . . . 4-13
**Output Trays . . . . . 4-15**
Output Tray Types . . . . . 4-15
Face-down Output Tray . . . . . 4-15
Face-up Output Slot . . . . . 4-16
Paper Capacity of the Output Trays . . . . . 4-17
Selecting an Output Tray . . . . . 4-18
Switching to the Face-up Output Slot. . . . . 4-18
Switching to the Face-down Output Tray . . . . . 4-18
**Printing from the Paper Cassette . . . . . 4-19**
Precautions on Loading Paper . . . . . 4-20
Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette. . . . . 4-21
When Loading Standard Size Paper . . . . . 4-21
When Loading Custom Size Paper . . . . . 4-27
Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette. . . . . 4-34
**Printing from the Manual Feed Slot . . . . . 4-37**
Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot . . . . . 4-38
When Loading Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label, or Index Card . . . . . 4-38
When Loading Envelope . . . . . 4-43
Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Manual Feed Slot . . . . . 4-46
**2-sided Printing . . . . . 4-48**
Switching Between Automatic 2-sided Printing and 1-sided Printing . . . . . 4-48
Setting the Paper Size Switch Lever . . . . . 4-49
Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing . . . . . 4-51
When Feeding Paper from the Paper Cassette . . . . . 4-52
When Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot. . . . . 4-53
Loading Paper for Manual 2-sided Printing . . . . . 4-54




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Chapter 5 The Printing Environment


**Menu Functions . . . . . 5-2**
Menu Functions . . . . . 5-2
Setting Priority . . . . . 5-3
Menu Categories . . . . . 5-3
Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation . . . . . 5-4
**How to Use the Operation Keys . . . . . 5-5**
**How to View the Display . . . . . 5-7**
Menu Structure . . . . . 5-7
How to View the Display . . . . . 5-7
**Menu Functions and Menu Operation . . . . . 5-9**
SETUP Menu . . . . . 5-9
SETUP Menu Functions . . . . . 5-9
Operating Procedure for the SETUP Menu . . . . . 5-9
UTILITY Menu . . . . . 5-11
UTILITY Menu Functions . . . . . 5-11
Operating Procedure for the UTILITY Menu . . . . . 5-11
JOB Menu . . . . . 5-12
JOB Menu Functions . . . . . 5-12
Operating Procedure for the JOB Menu . . . . . 5-12
RESET Menu . . . . . 5-13
RESET Menu Functions . . . . . 5-13
Operating Procedure for the RESET Menu . . . . . 5-13
CANCEL JOB Menu . . . . . 5-14
CANCEL JOB Menu Functions . . . . . 5-14
Operating Procedure for the CANCEL JOB Menu . . . . . 5-14
SELECT FEEDER Menu . . . . . 5-15
SELECT FEEDER Menu Functions . . . . . 5-15
Operating Procedure for the SELECT FEEDER Menu . . . . . 5-15
**Initializing the SETUP Menu . . . . . 5-17**


## Chapter 6 Printing Environment Settings


**Setting Items . . . . . 6-2**
SETUP Menu . . . . . 6-2
UTILITY Menu . . . . . 6-8
JOB Menu . . . . . 6-8
RESET Menu . . . . . 6-8
SELECT FEEDER Menu . . . . . 6-9
**SETUP Menu Settings . . . . . 6-10**
CONTROL MENU Options . . . . . 6-10
FEEDER MENU Options . . . . . 6-12
LAYOUT MENU Options . . . . . 6-19
QUALITY MENU Options . . . . . 6-23




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

INTERFACE MENU Options . . . . . 6-25
USER MAIN. Options . . . . . 6-30
PCL SETUP Options . . . . . 6-32
UFR II SETUP Options . . . . . 6-37
**UTILITY Menu Settings . . . . . 6-38**
**JOB Menu Settings . . . . . 6-40**
**RESET Menu Settings . . . . . 6-41**
**SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings . . . . . 6-43**

## Chapter 7 Routine Maintenance

**Replacing the Toner Cartridge . . . . . 7-2**
Before Replacing the Toner Cartridge . . . . . 7-2
Replacing the Toner Cartridge . . . . . 7-7
Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges . . . . . 7-14
Storing Toner Cartridges . . . . . 7-16
**Adjusting the Print Density . . . . . 7-18**
**Cleaning the Fixing Roller . . . . . 7-19**
**Adjusting the Printing Position . . . . . 7-22**
Checking the Printing Position . . . . . 7-22
Adjusting the Printing Position . . . . . 7-24
**Cleaning the Outside of the Printer . . . . . 7-28**
**Moving the Printer . . . . . 7-31**
**Handling the Printer . . . . . 7-37**

## Chapter 8 Troubleshooting

**When You Have Trouble Printing . . . . . 8-2**
**Paper Jams . . . . . 8-4**
Paper Jam Location . . . . . 8-7
Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams . . . . . 8-8
**Message List . . . . . 8-27**
**Service Call Display . . . . . 8-37**
**When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results . . . . . 8-39**
Problems with the Power or Printer Operation . . . . . 8-39
Problems with the Printout Results . . . . . 8-42
Print Quality Problems . . . . . 8-46

## Chapter 9 Installing the Optional Accessories

**Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-2**
Removing the Packing Materials . . . . . 9-2
Moving the Printer . . . . . 9-5
Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-9



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Chapter 10 Appendix

**The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode . . . . . 10-2**
**The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode . . . . . 10-4**
**Typeface Samples . . . . . 10-5**
Scalable Fonts (PCL) . . . . . 10-5
Bitmapped Fonts (PCL) . . . . . 10-6
**Symbol Sets Supported . . . . . 10-7**
Character Code Tables . . . . . 10-7
ISO Substitution Tables . . . . . 10-26
**Specifications . . . . . 10-30**
Hardware Specifications . . . . . 10-30
Controller Specifications . . . . . 10-32
Software Specifications . . . . . 10-33
**Dimensions of Each Part . . . . . 10-34**
**Index . . . . . 10-36**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Preface

Thank you for purchasing the Canon LBP3360.
Please read this manual thoroughly before operating the printer in order to familiarize yourself with its capabilities, and to make the most of its many functions.
After reading this manual, store it in a safe place for future reference.

## How To Use This Manual

### Symbols Used in This Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to explain procedures, restrictions, handling precautions, and instructions that should be observed for safety.

| | |
|---|---|
| **WARNING** | Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly.<br>In order to use the printer safely, always pay attention to these warnings. |
| **CAUTION** | Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons, or damage to property if not performed correctly.<br>In order to use the printer safely, always pay attention to these cautions. |
| IMPORTANT | Indicates operational requirements and restrictions.<br>Be sure to read these items carefully in order to operate the printer correctly, and to avoid damage to the printer. |
| NOTE | Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure.<br>Reading these notes is highly recommended. |

### Keys and Buttons Used in This Manual

The following button names are a few examples of how keys and buttons to be pressed are expressed in this manual:

- Keys on the Control Panel: Key icon + (Key Name)

  Example: (Online)
  (Utility)

- Buttons on Computer Operation Screen : [Button Name]

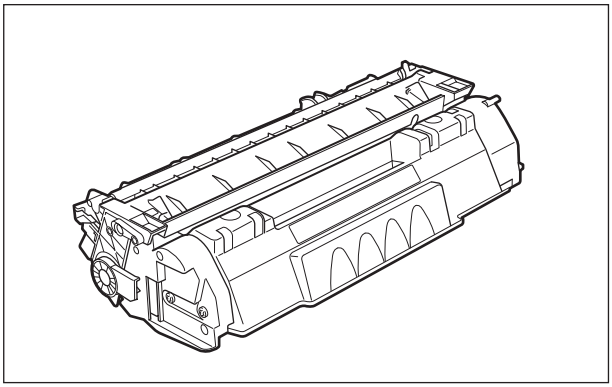
  Example: [OK]
  [Details]



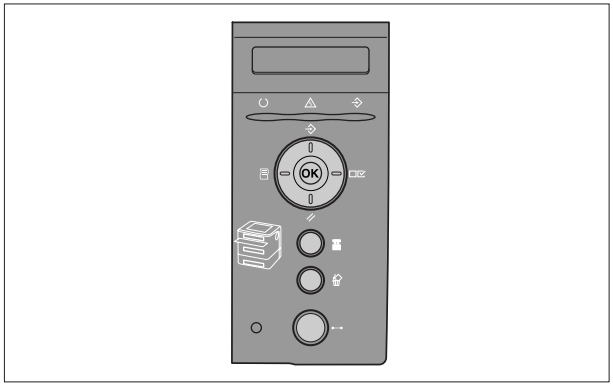
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Illustrations Used in This Manual

- The toner cartridge used for the illustrations in this manual is the one that can print approximately 2,500 pages (Canon Genuine Cartridge).



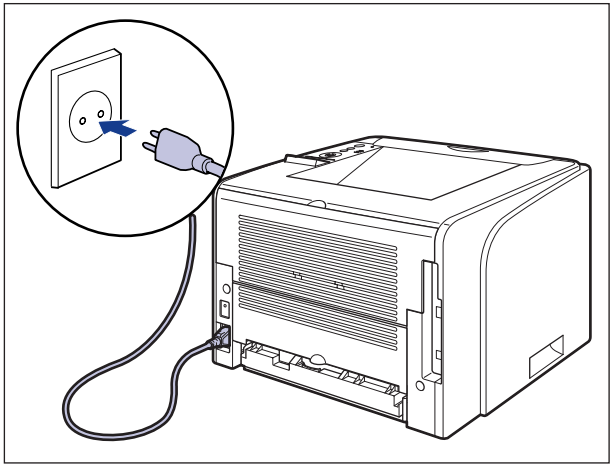
- Although the names of the indicators or keys are not indicated in the illustrations of the control panel used in this manual, the names are indicated on the control panel depending on the country or region.






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• Although the power cord used in this manual is as the one in the following illustration, the form of the power cord may differ depending on the country or region.



## Abbreviations Used in This Manual

In this manual, product names and model names are abbreviated as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system: | Windows 98 |
| Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system: | Windows Me |
| Microsoft® Windows® 2000 operating system: | Windows 2000 |
| Microsoft® Windows® XP operating system: | Windows XP |
| Microsoft® Windows Server™ 2003 operating system: | Windows Server 2003 |
| Microsoft® Windows Vista™ operating system | Windows Vista |
| Microsoft® Windows® operating system: | Windows |



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Legal Notices

## EMC Directive (220 - 240 V model)

"This equipment has been tested in a typical system to comply with the technical requirements of EMC Directive."

- Use of shielded cable is necessary to comply with the technical requirements of EMC Directive.

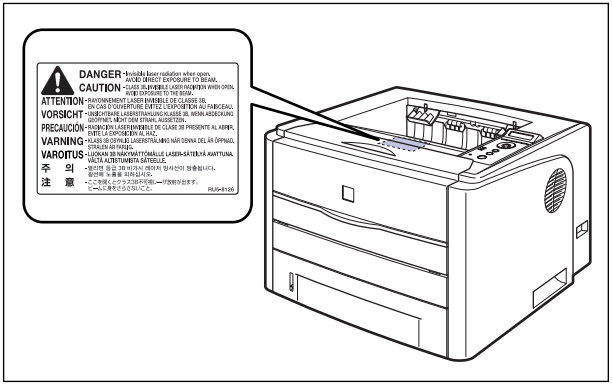
The product is in conformity with the EMC directive at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz.

C-tick marking on the rating label means that we declare the product is in conformity with the relevant requirements at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz.

## Laser Safety (220 - 240 V model)

Laser radiation could be hazardous to the human body. For this reason, laser radiation emitted inside this printer is hermetically sealed within the protective housing and external cover. No radiation can leak from the printer in the normal operation of the product by the user.

This printer is classified as a Class 1 laser product under IEC60825-1:1993, EN60825-1:1994, and as for the U.S.A., it is classified as Class 1 under the Code of Federal Regulations, 1040.10 of Title 21.






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

This printer has been classified under IEC60825-1:1993, EN60825-1:1994 and conforms to the following classes:

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
LASER KLASSE 1
APPAREIL A RAYONNEMENT LASER DE CLASSE 1
APPARECCHIO LASER DI CLASSE 1
PRODUCTO LASER DE CLASE 1
APARELHO A LASER DE CLASSE 1

**CAUTION**

**Performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

## International Energy Star-Program

As an ENERGY STAR Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR Program for energy efficiency.

The International ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is an international program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which business proprietors can participate voluntarily.

The targeted products are office equipment, such as computers, displays, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. The standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## WEEE Directive

European Union (and EEA) only.

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC) and your national law. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

## License Notice

This product contains UFST (Universal Font Scaling Technology) under license from Agfa Corporation.

Copyright © 1997-2001 Agfa Monotype Corporation.

## Trademarks

Canon, the Canon Logo, LBP, and NetSpot are trademarks of Canon Inc.

Adobe, Adobe Acrobat, and Adobe Reader are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple, AppleTalk, Mac OS, Macintosh, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

PCL, PCL5, and PCL6 are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Windows Server and Windows Vista are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Concerning typeface credit, the actual names on a FONTS LIST for this machine may differ from those listed below.

CG and UFST are trademarks of Agfa Monotype Corporation or its affiliated companies and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

Marigold is trademark of AlphaOmega Typography, Inc.

Clarendon and Times are trademarks of Linotype-Hell AG and its subsidiaries. Univers is a trademark of Linotype-Hell AG and its subsidiaries and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

Coronet is a registered trademark of Ludlow Type Foundry.

Wingdings is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Albertus, Arial and Times New Roman are trademarks of the Monotype Corporation plc., and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

CG Omega is a product of Agfa Corporation and CG Times, based on Times New Roman under license from the Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation.

Other product and company names herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

## Copyright

Copyright 2007 by Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Disclaimers

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

## Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Money Orders
- Certificates of Deposit
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title
- Travelers Checks
- Food Stamps
- Passports
- Immigration Papers
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Stock Certificates
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Important Safety Instructions

Please read these "Important Safety Instructions" thoroughly before operating the printer. As these instructions are intended to prevent injury to the user or other persons or destruction of property, always pay attention to these instructions. Also, since it may result in unexpected accidents or injuries, do not perform any operation unless otherwise specified in the manual. Improper operation or use of this machine could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.

## Installation

**WARNING**

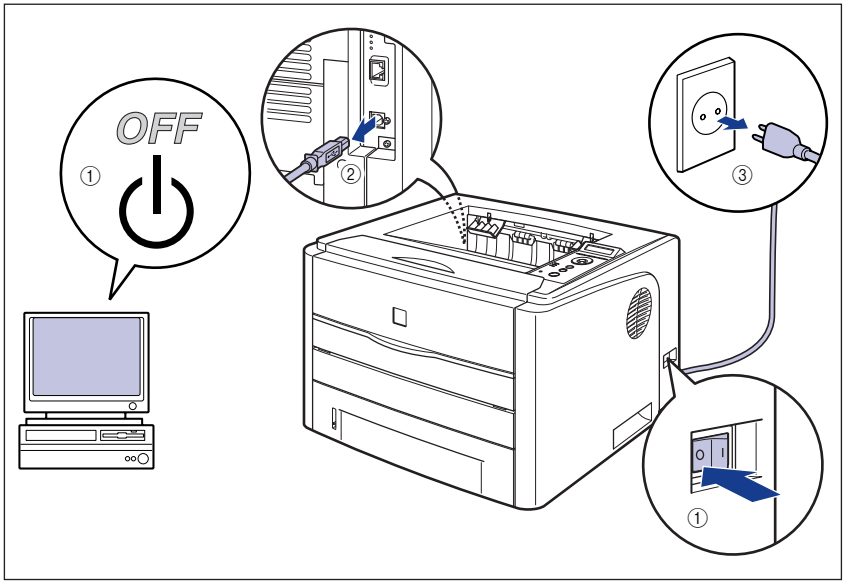
- **Do not install the printer near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not place the following items on the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the power switch ① and disconnect the USB cable ② if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ③ and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.**

  **- Necklaces and other metal objects**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Cups, vases, flowerpots, and other containers filled with water or liquids




**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.**
- **Never block the ventilation slots on the printer. The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Never place the printer on a soft surface, such as a sofa or rug. Blocking the ventilation slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.**
- **Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
  - **A damp or dusty location**
  - **A location exposed to smoke and steam such as cookeries and humidifiers**
  - **A location exposed to rain or snow**
  - **A location near water faucets or water**
  - **A location exposed to direct sunlight**
  - **A location subject to high temperatures**
  - **A location near open flames**
- **When installing the printer, gently lower the printer onto the floor or other machine to avoid catching your hands, as this may result in personal injury.**
- **When connecting the interface cable, connect it properly following the instructions in this manual. If not connected properly, this may result in malfunction or electrical shock.**
- **When moving the printer, follow the instructions in this manual to hold it correctly. Failure to do so may cause you to drop the printer, resulting in personal injury. (See "Moving the Printer," on p. 7-31)**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Power Supply

**WARNING**

- **Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord, or pull on or excessively bend it, as this could cause electrical damage and result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Keep the power cord away from a heat source; failure to do this may cause the power cord coating to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in electrical shock.**
- **Do not plug the power cord to a multiplug power strip, as this may cause a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not bundle up or tie the power cord in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet, as failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not use power cords other than the power cord provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **As a general rule, do not use extension cords or plug extension cords to a multiple power strip. If extension cords must be used or plugged to a multiple power strip, however, use them observing the following points on user's own authority. If you use extension cords improperly, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
  - **Do not connect one extension cord to another.**
  - **Make sure that the voltage of the power plug is the one indicated in the rating label (attached on the inside of the printer) when you use the printer.**
  - **Use an extension cord that allows the current value greater than the necessary one indicated in the rating label (attached on the inside of the printer).**
  - **When you use an extension cord, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.**
  - **Periodically check that the extension cord is not overheated.**

**CAUTION**

- **Do not use power supplies with voltages other than those specified herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Always grasp the plug when unplugging the power cord. Pulling on the power cord may expose or snap the core wire, or otherwise damage the power cord. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause current to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you will be unable to unplug it in an emergency.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Handling

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the printer. There are high-temperature and high-voltage components inside the printer which may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Electrical equipment can be hazardous if not used properly. To avoid injury, do not allow children access to the interior of any electrical product and do not let them touch any electrical contacts or gears that are exposed.**
- **If the printer makes strange noises, or emits smoke, heat or unusual smells, immediately turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the USB cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Otherwise, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not use highly flammable sprays near the printer. If gas from these sprays comes into contact with the electrical components inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Always turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the interface cables when moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not drop paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. Also, do not spill water, liquids, or flammable substances (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, etc.) inside the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the USB cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.**
- **When plugging or unplugging the USB cable when the power plug is plugged in an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

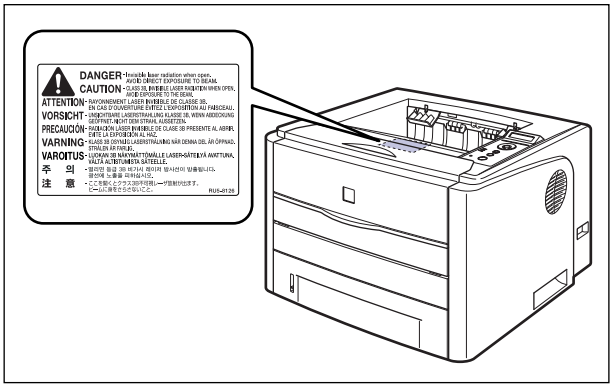
- **Do not place heavy objects on the printer, as they may tip over or fall resulting in personal injury.**
- **Turn OFF the power switch for safety when the printer will not be used for a long period of time such as overnight. Also, turn OFF the power switch and unplug the power plug for safety when the printer will not be used for an extended period of time such as during consecutive holidays.**
- **Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.**
- **The laser beam can be harmful to human bodies. Since radiation emitted inside the printer is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the printer during any phase of user operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.**

  **- Never open covers other than those instructed in this manual.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.


DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when open.
AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
CAUTION - CLASS 3B INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN.
AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM.
ATTENTION - RAYONNEMENT LASER INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 3B.
EN CAS D'OUVERTURE ÉVITEZ L'EXPOSITION AU FAISCEAU.
VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG KLASSE 3B, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
PRECAUCIÓN - RADIACIÓN LÁSER INVISIBLE DE CLASE 3B PRESENTE AL ABRIR.
EVITE LA EXPOSICIÓN AL HAZ.
VARNING - KLASS 3B OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD.
STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.
VAROITUS - LUOKAN 3B NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASER-SÄTEILYLLÄ AVATTUNA.
ÄLKÄ ALTISTUMISTA SÄTEELLE.
주 의 - 열어면 등급 3B 비가시 레이저 방사선이 방출됩니다.
광선에 노출을 피하십시오.
注 意 - ここを開くとクラス3B不可視レーザー放射が出ます。
ビームに曝をさらさないこと。
RUS-0126

- If the laser beam escapes from the printer, exposure may cause serious damage to your eyes.

# Maintenance and Inspections

## ⚠ WARNING

- When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the printer and computer, remove the USB cable, and then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet regularly, and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the AC power outlet with a dry cloth to ensure that all dust and grime is removed. If the power plug is plugged for a long period of time in a damp, dusty, or smoky location, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp. This may cause a short circuit and result in a fire.
- Clean the printer using a slightly dampened cloth with water or a mild detergent diluted with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.
- Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Never attempt to service this printer yourself, except as explained in this manual. There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. Adjust only those controls that are covered in the operating instructions. Improper adjustment could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer become hot during use. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.**
- **When removing jammed paper or replacing a toner cartridge, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.**
- **When removing paper jammed inside the printer, remove the jammed paper gently to prevent the toner on the paper from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.**
- **When loading paper or removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**
- **When removing a used toner cartridge from the toner cartridge slot, remove the cartridge carefully to prevent the toner from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.**

## Consumables

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite and result in burns or a fire.**
- **Do not store a toner cartridge or copy paper in places exposed to open flames, as this may cause the toner or paper to ignite and result in burns or a fire.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Keep toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If these items are ingested, consult a physician immediately.**

## Others

**⚠ WARNING**

**The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic field. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge and consult your physician immediately.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the printer's features and the names of its parts. It also explains how to set up the printer, how to load paper, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Printer . . . . . 1-6
Control Panel Keys . . . . . 1-7
Display . . . . . 1-8
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Features and Benefits

This chapter describes the major features.

## ■ High-speed Printing

By mounting a newly-developed high-speed controller on the 21 ppm high-speed engine, LBP3360 achieves super high-speed data processing. By improving the "TypeWing" function that enables a quick start with the 0 second warm-up time (approximately 7 seconds from power ON) and high-speed output of the TrueType fonts, LBP3360 has increased the printing speed on fast printing and multiple page printing as well as copy mode printing that achieves fine high-speed printing.

## ■ Superior Print Quality

High resolution printing at 600 dpi (dots per inch) is further enhanced by Automatic Image Refinement to smooth jagged edges in addition to using super fine toner.

Combined, these will ensure superior reproduction quality of text and graphics.

## ■ Software Compatibility and Language Switching

The printer supports Hewlett-Packard's PCL 5e/PCL 6 printer languages, which enables the printer to work with a wide variety of software applications supporting PCL. This printer also supports UFR II. UFR II, a printing system compatible with the latest operating systems, distributes the printing process to a computer and printer, achieving a high-speed print output.

## ■ Duplex Unit Installed as Standard

LBP3360 is supplied with the duplex unit. Therefore, you can automatically perform 2-sided printing with paper (A4, Legal, and Letter size) loaded in the manual feed slot or paper cassette. By doing so, you can save paper and make the file space more efficient.

## ■ Energy Saving

The on-demand fusing technology of the printer provides improved energy efficiency.

Because of this power saving feature, the printer meets the guidelines for the International Energy Star Program.

## ■ Interface Features

The printer uses a USB port that supports Microsoft Plug & Play technology. It also comes with a print server as standard, being used as a network printer for Ethernet.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Typefaces

The printer comes with 45 scalable typefaces in 16 typeface families (Agfa 45 MicroType fonts), all compatible with application software supporting Microsoft Windows. In addition, 10 bitmapped typefaces of the Line Printer family are also included. The printer uses the Universal Font Scaling Technology (UFST) for outline fonts, provided under license from Agfa Monotype Corporation. 31 TrueType screen fonts are also included along with Canon Font Manager for easy management of installed fonts in Microsoft Windows 98/Me and Windows 2000/XP.

## ■ Printer Drivers and Utilities

LBP3360 is provided with the printer driver for PCL 5e/PCL 6 that supports Windows 98/Me/2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista and UFR II Printer Driver that supports Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista and Mac OS X, allowing you to print from a various kinds of system environment.

Also, NetSpot Device Installer supplied with LBP3360 simplifies the management and settings of the printer on a network environment.

IMPORTANT

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

## ■ Remote UI Support

The printer supports a Remote UI function that allows you to control or monitor the status of the printer from a computer. (See Remote UI Guide.)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# User Manual CD-ROM Menu

The User Manual CD-ROM Menu is software that enables you to select and view PDF Manuals included on the CD-ROM via your computer screen. Follow the instructions below to use the User Manual CD-ROM Menu.

## System Requirements

The User Manual CD-ROM Menu can be used in the following system environments.

| | Windows | Macintosh |
|---|---|---|
| Operating System | Windows 98<br>Windows Me<br>Windows 2000 (Service Pack 3 or later)<br>Windows XP (Service Pack 1a or later)<br>Windows Server 2003<br>Windows Vista | Mac OS X |
| Memory | The memory required to run the above operating systems. | |
| Computer | A computer that can run the above operating systems. | |
| Display | A resolution of 1024 x 768 pixels or higher. | |

**IMPORTANT**

Depending on the configuration of your computer, some functions may not operate correctly. If the PDF manual does not open from the CD-ROM Menu, open the PDF file directly from the [english] folder on the User Manual CD-ROM.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

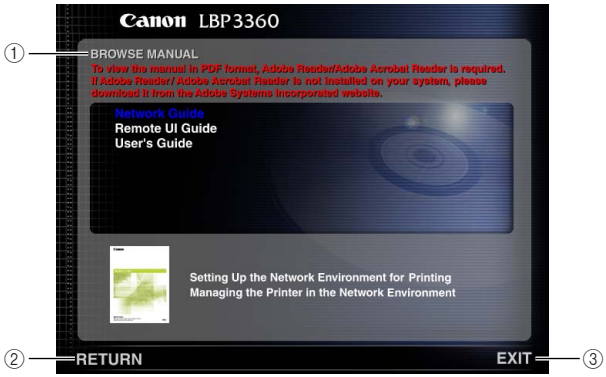
# Using The CD-ROM Menu

This section describes how to use the CD-ROM Menu. When you insert the User Manual CD-ROM provided into the CD-ROM drive, the Language Selection screen is displayed. Clicking a language on this screen displays the following menu.

(The sample screen shot shown here is for Windows users.)

NOTE

For Macintosh users, double-click the [START] icon to start the CD-ROM Menu. The Language Selection screen is displayed.


Canon LBP3360
①
BROWSE MANUAL
To view the manual in PDF format, Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is required. If Adobe Reader/ Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed on your system, please download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.
Network Guide
Remote UI Guide
User's Guide
Setting Up the Network Environment for Printing
Managing the Printer in the Network Environment
②
RETURN
EXIT
③

**① BROWSE MANUAL**

You can read any of the listed guides by clicking on the desired guide. After clicking on the desired guide, Acrobat Reader starts, and the PDF manual is displayed.

**② RETURN**

Return to the Language Selection screen.

**③ EXIT**

Exit the CD-ROM menu.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Parts and Their Functions

This printer consists of components that perform various functions. This section describes the name and function of each part in order for you to use this printer properly to make full use of its functions.

## Printer

The following are the parts and functions of the printer unit.

**CAUTION**

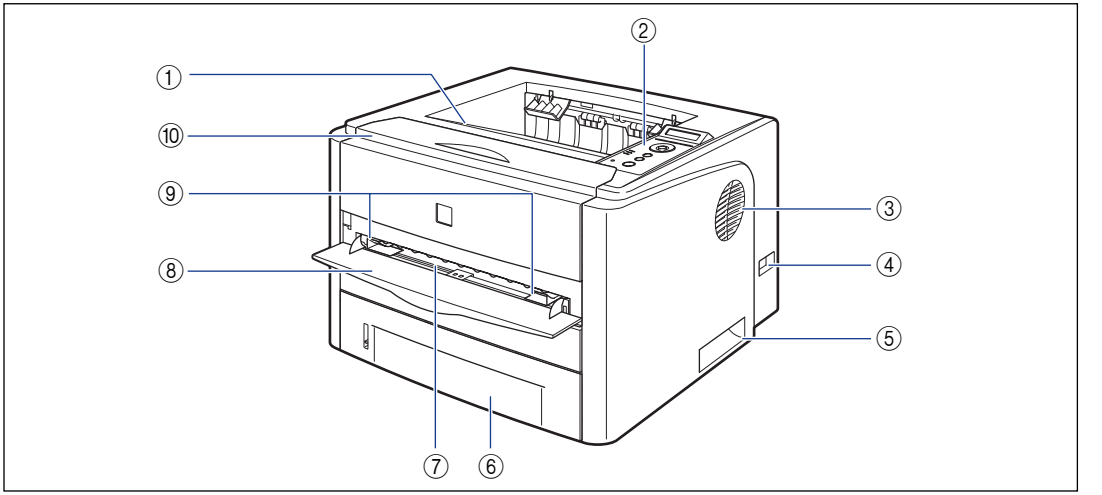
**Never block the ventilation slots on the printer. The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Blocking the ventilation slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.**

### *Front View*

The following are the parts on the front side of the printer and their functions.

NOTE

Remove the film attached to the control panel before using the panel.




**① Face-down Output Tray**

Outputs paper with the printed side facing down. (See p. 4-15)

**② Control Panel**

Displays the printer status and allows you to specify the settings. (See p. 1-9)



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**③ Ventilation Slots**

Cool the insides of the printer.

**④ Power Switch**

Turns the power of the printer ON/OFF. (See p. 2-28)

**⑤ Lift Handles**

Hold these handles when moving the printer. (See p. 7-33)

**⑥ Paper Cassette**

Can be loaded with up to 250 sheets of plain paper (of 80 g/m$^2$). (See p. 4-19)

**⑦ Manual Feed Slot**

Used when printing a sheet at a time manually. (See p. 4-37)

**⑧ Manual Feed Slot Cover**

Open when using the manual feed slot.

**⑨ Paper Guides**

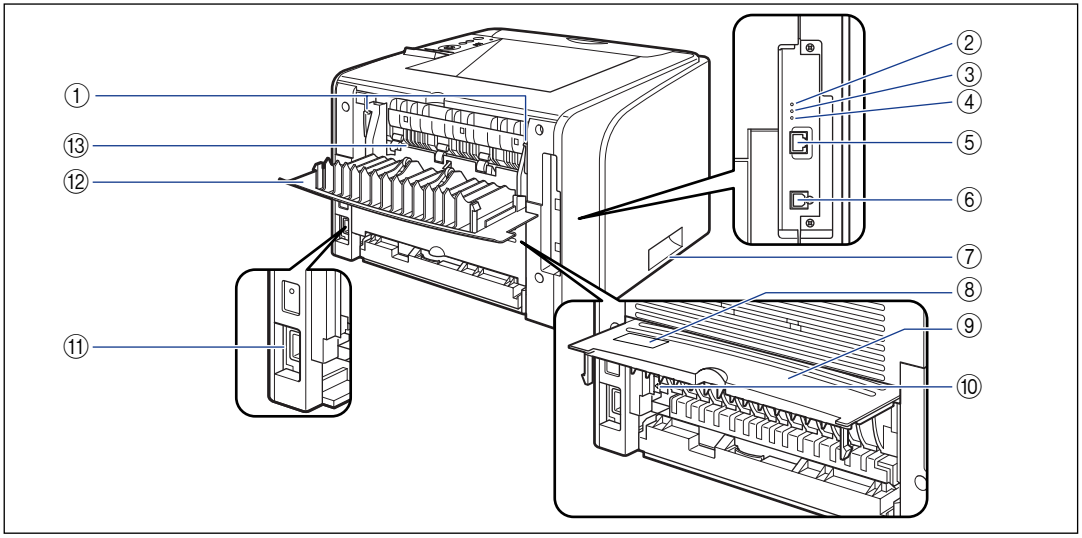
Align them with the width of the paper so that the paper is fed straight.

**⑩ Front Cover**

Opened when replacing the toner cartridge or removing jammed paper. (See p. 7-8)

## *Rear View*

The following are the parts on the rear side of the printer and their functions.




**① Pressure Release Levers**

When a paper jam occurs, tilt the lever toward you to release the pressure in the fixing unit. (See p. 8-9)

**② 100 Indicator (Green)**

Comes on when the printer is connected to a network by 100BASE-TX.

**③ 10 Indicator (Green)**

Comes on when the printer is connected to a network by 10BASE-T.

**④ TX/RX Indicator (Green)**

Blinks while the print server is communicating.

**⑤ LAN Connector**

Connects to a 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX LAN cable.

**⑥ USB Connector**

Connected to the USB cable. Connect the other end of the cable to the USB port on the computer.

**⑦ Lift Handles**

Hold these handles when moving the printer. (See p. 7-33)

**⑧ Serial No. Label**

The serial number (Serial No.) for printer identification is indicated on this label. The number is required for receiving service or repairs.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**⑨ Duplex Unit Cover**

Opened when specifying the size of paper for 2-sided printing or removing paper jammed in the duplex unit.

**⑩ Paper Size Switch Lever**

Switch the lever according to the paper size for 2-sided printing when performing 2-sided printing. (See p. 4-49)

**⑪ Power Socket**

Connect the supplied power cord to this socket.

**⑫ Output Selection Cover**

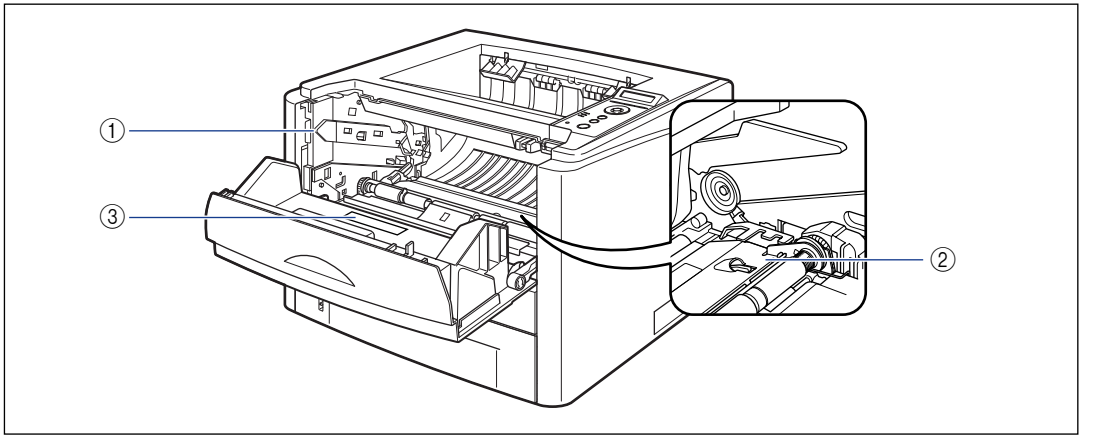
Open when using the face-up output slot or removing paper jammed in the output area. (See p. 4-18)

**⑬ Face-up Output Slot**

Outputs paper with the printed side facing up. (See p. 4-16)

## *Inner View*

The following are the parts inside the printer and their functions.




**① Toner Cartridge Guide**

When setting the toner cartridge, push it while aligning the projections on each side of the toner cartridge with this guide. (See p. 7-13)

**② Transport Guide**

Raised when removing paper jammed in the front cover. (See p. 8-11)

**③ Rating Label**

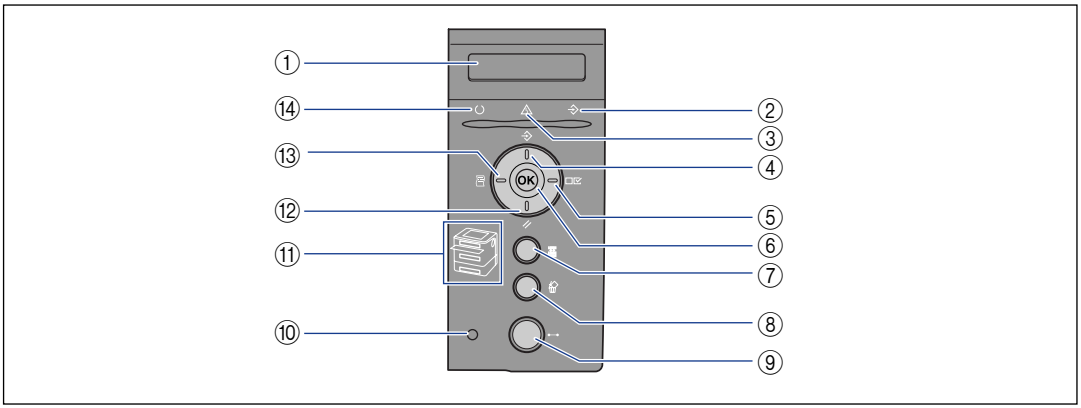
The current value indicated in this rating label shows the average power current consumption.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Control Panel

The control panel on the top of the printer allows you to check the printer status and use the printer functions.




* Unlike in the above illustration, the names of the indicators or keys are indicated on the control panel depending on the country or region.

### ① Display

Displays the printer status, messages, the items and setting values of the menu functions. (See p. 1-11)

### ② Job Indicator (Green)

On:
The printer is receiving print data, or any print data remains in the printer memory.
Blinking:
The printer is processing print data.
Off:
There is no print data in the printer memory.

### ③ Message Indicator (Orange)

On:
The printer cannot print because a problem has occurred in the printer. (If the printer has entered Power Save Mode 1 when it is offline, only the (Message) indicator (orange) and Power indicator (green) are on.)
Off:
The printer is in a normal state.

### ④ Job ( ▲ ) Key

On offline:
Does not function when the printer is offline.
On online:
Displays the JOB menu.
On menu operation:
Goes back to the previous menu (Goes back up the hierarchy).

### ⑤ Settings ( ► ) Key

On offline:
Displays the SETUP menu.
On online:
Displays the SETUP menu. However, the USER MAIN. options cannot be specified when the printer is online.
On menu operation:
Displays the next right item in the menu. Increases the setting value.

### ⑥ [OK] Key

On offline:
Does not function when the printer is offline.
On online:
Does not function when the printer is online.
On menu operation:
Goes to the next menu (Goes down the hierarchy). In a lowest menu level (When a setting value is displayed), determines the setting value.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ⑦ Feeder Selection Key

On offline:
Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu.
On online:
Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu.
On menu operation:
Does not function.

### ⑧ Cancel Job Key

On offline:
Cancels the job when the (Job) indicator is on or blinking. Does not function when the (Job) indicator is off.
On online:
Cancels the job when the (Job) indicator is on or blinking. Does not function when the (Job) indicator is off.

### ⑨ Online Key/Online Indicator (Green)

Turns on (online)/off (offline) the connection to the computer.
This key also has the function that, when an error has occurred, releases the printer from the error temporarily and continues the paused job. However, depending on the error, you may not be able to cancel it out.
The (Online) indicator under the (Online) key indicates the following printer status with its status.
On:
Online (The printer can receive print data from the computer.)
Off:
Offline (The printer cannot receive print data from the computer.)
However, if the printer has entered Power Save Mode, the (Online) indicator is off even when the printer is online. (See p. 3-4)

### ⑩ Power Indicator (Green)

On:
The printer is ON.
Off:
The printer is OFF.

### ⑪ Paper Source Indicators (Green)

On:
The indicator for the currently selected paper source comes on.
Blinking:
There is no paper in the currently selected paper source, or the paper cassette is not set.
Off:
No paper source is selected. No paper cassette including the optional one or paper feeder is set.

### ⑫ Reset ( ▼ ) Key

On offline:
Displays the RESET menu.
On online:
Displays the RESET menu.
On menu operation:
Goes to the next menu (Goes down the hierarchy). In a lowest menu level (When a setting value is displayed), determines the setting value.

### ⑬ Utility ( ◄ ) Key

On offline:
Does not function when the printer is offline.
On online:
Displays the UTILITY menu.
On menu operation:
Displays the next left item in the menu. Decreases the setting value.

### ⑭ Ready Indicator (Green)

On:
The printer is ready to print. (If the printer has entered Power Save Mode 1 when it is online, only the (Ready) indicator (green) and Power indicator (green) are on.)
Blinking:
The printer is performing a self-diagnostic test. The printer is in a warm-up state.
Off:
The printer cannot print.


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Display

The display on the printer's control panel is as shown in the following. It displays the printer status, messages, items and settings of the menu functions.

When the printer is ready to print

When operating the printer using the control panel

**① Status/Operation Field**

Displays the printer status and operation mode.

**② Paper Source/Paper Size Field**

Displays the size of paper in the currently selected paper source using an abbreviation. The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation. (Legal: LG, Letter: LT, Executive: EX, Statement: ST, Envelope DL: DL, Envelope COM10: CO, Envelope C5: EC5, Envelope Monarch: MO, Envelope B5: EB5, Index Card: IC, Custom Size: 80 to 99, Custom SizeR: 80R to 99R, Free/Mixed Sizes: FR)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are available in order to use this printer to its full extent. Purchase them to fulfill your needs. For the optional accessories, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

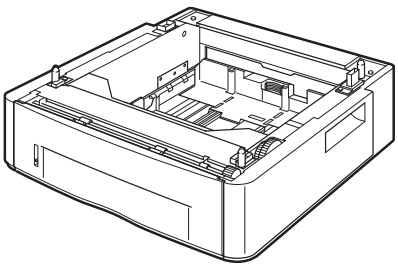
## Paper Feeder

This printer is supplied with 2 paper sources: the paper cassette and manual feed slot. By installing the optional paper feeder, up to 3 paper sources can be used.

The paper feeder unit PF-35P consists of a paper feeder and paper cassette.

The paper cassette can be loaded with up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m$^2$) at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, and paper of the following custom paper sizes.

- When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm
- When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 210.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 215.9 mm



Paper Feeder Unit PF-35P



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1

CHAPTER

# Before Using the Printer

This chapter describes the [illegible] and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Printer . . . . . 1-6
Control Panel Keys . . . . . 1-7
Display . . . . . 1-8
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Installation Procedure

According to your installation condition, perform the relevant procedure. When you do not install the optional accessories, skip the procedures indicated with (Optional).

1. **Installing the Paper Feeder (See p. 9-2)** (Optional)
2. **Installing the Printer Unit (See p. 2-10)**
3. **Installing the Toner Cartridge (See p. 7-7)**
4. **Loading Paper (See p. 4-21, 4-38)**
5. **Connecting the Power Cord (See p. 2-21)**
6. **Connecting the Printer Unit to a Computer (See p. 2-23)**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Environments

In order to use this printer in a safe and comfortable manner, install the printer in a place that fulfills "Temperature/Humidity Conditions", "Power Supply Requirements", and "Installation Requirements" described in "Installation Environment".

IMPORTANT

Before installing the printer, be sure to read "Important Safety Instructions" (See p. xvi).

## Installation Environment

Select an installation site for this printer in view of the following environmental conditions.

### *Temperature/Humidity Conditions*

Use the printer in a location where the temperature and humidity are in the following ranges.

- Ambient temperature: 10 to 32.5 °C (50 to 90.5 °F)
- Ambient humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

IMPORTANT

- Water droplets (condensation) may form inside the printer under the following circumstances. Leave the printer for two hours or more to adjust to the surrounding temperature and humidity before using it.
  - When the room where the printer is installed is heated rapidly
  - When the printer is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location
- If water droplets form inside the printer, the paper transport path will not function properly, and this may result in paper jams, damage to the printer, or printer error.

**■ To customers using an ultrasonic humidifier**

If you use an ultrasonic humidifier in conjunction with tap water or well water, impurities in the water will be dispersed through the air. These can be trapped inside the printer, causing degradations in printing quality. When you are using these humidifiers, it is therefore recommended that you use purified water or other water that is free of impurities.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Power Supply Requirements

The maximum power consumption of this printer is 970 W* or less. Electrical noise or a dramatic drop in mains voltage may cause the printer to operate incorrectly or lose data, and can also cause the computer to fail.

* The instantaneous peak on startup shall not be counted.

Use power supplies rated for voltages in the following ranges.

• 220 to 240 V (± 10 %) 50/60 Hz (± 2 Hz)

IMPORTANT

- An AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer. Any other sockets of the AC power outlet should not be used.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- Do not plug the power plug of the printer and that of machinery which consumes a large amount of electricity or generates electrical noise, such as a copy machine, air conditioner, or shredder, into the same AC power outlet.

## Installation Requirements

Install the printer in the following locations.

- A location where sufficient space can be secured
- A well-ventilated room
- A flat, even surface
- A sturdy platform that can easily support the weight of the printer and optional accessories

**WARNING**

**Do not install the printer near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.**

**CAUTION**

- **Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
  - **A damp or dusty location**
  - **A location exposed to smoke and steam such as cookeries and humidifiers**
  - **A location exposed to rain or snow**
  - **A location near water faucets or water**
  - **A location exposed to direct sunlight**
  - **A location subject to high temperatures**
  - **A location near open flames**
- **Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in damage to the printer.

- An environment where the temperature and/or humidity can change dramatically, or where condensation occurs
- A poorly ventilated room
- A location near products that generate magnetic waves or electromagnetic waves
- In rooms such as laboratories where chemical reactions occur
- A place where salt content, corrosive gases such as ammonia, or toxic gases are contained
- A platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or the printer is liable to sink (such as a carpet or mat)

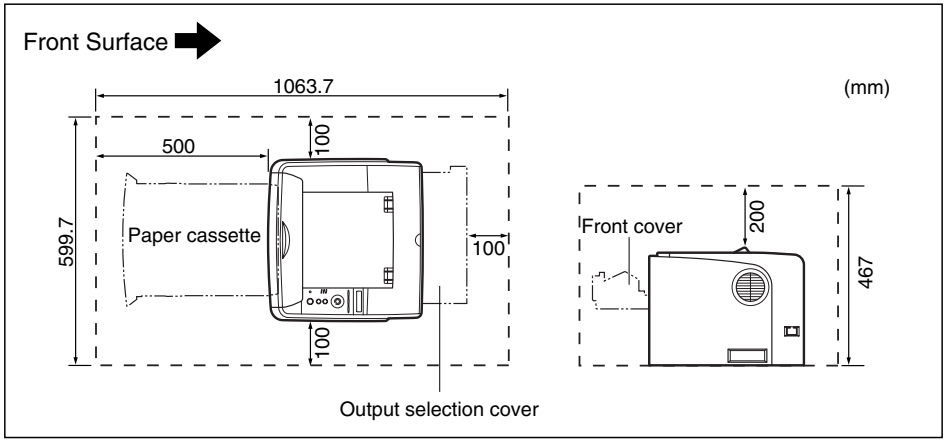


# Installation Space

Select an installation location where you can secure the following amounts of free space around the printer, and a surface that can support the weight of the printer. The dimensions of the space required around the components and the positions of the feet are as follows.

## *Required Peripheral Space*

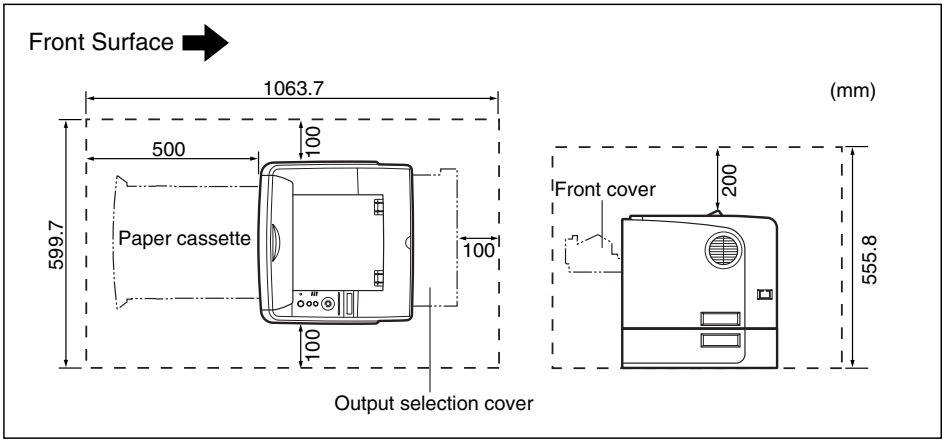
### ■ Standard state





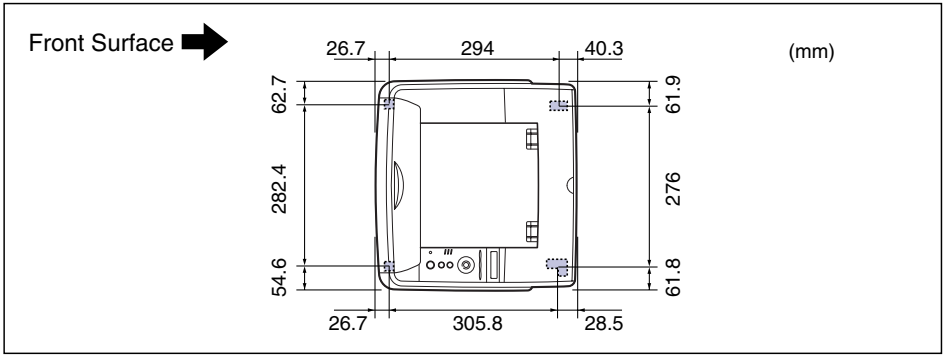

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ State with the paper feeder installed




## Foot Positions

### ■ Printer unit

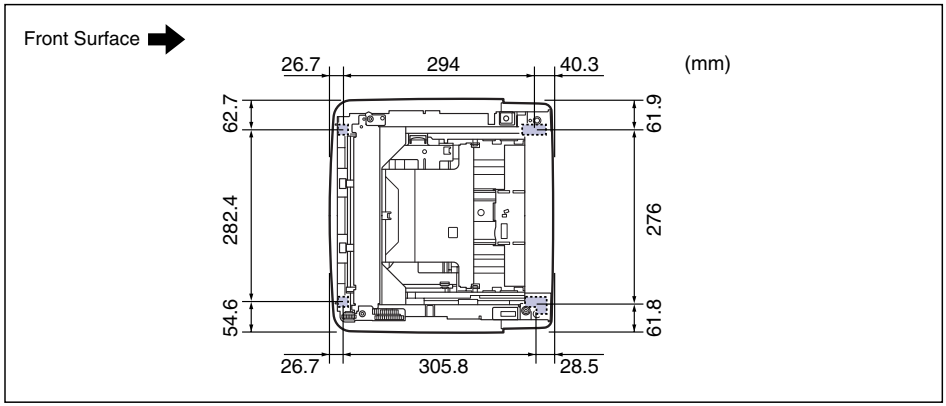



NOTE

The front feet are 7.8 mm high and their top surface is 12 mm square.
The rear feet are 7.8 mm high, the left top surface has a rectangular shape of 21.7 mm x 40 mm, and the right top surface is 31.7 mm x 40 mm and is L-shaped.


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Paper feeder unit PF-35P




NOTE

The front feet are 7.8 mm high and their top surface is 12 mm square.
The rear feet are 7.8 mm high, the left top surface has a rectangular shape of 21.7 mm x 40 mm, and the right top surface is 31.7 mm x 40 mm and is L-shaped.

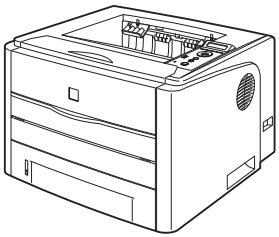




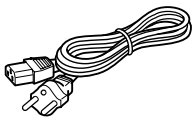
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Confirming the Package Contents

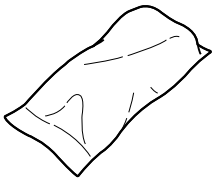
Make sure that all the following items are contained in the package before installing the printer. If any item is missing or damaged, please contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



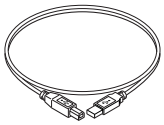
☐ Printer (The paper cassette is attached.)



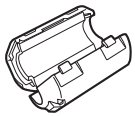
☐ Power cord
(The form of the supplied power cord may differ from the one in the above illustration.)



☐ Toner cartridge



☐ USB cable
(Only for countries and regions of Asia)



☐ Ferrite core

☐ User Software CD-ROM
- Printer Driver
- USB class driver
- Driver Guide

☐ User Manual CD-ROM
- Manuals
  - User's Guide
  - Remote UI Guide
  - Network Guide
- Canon Font Manager

**IMPORTANT**

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

- The life of the toner cartridge included with the printer is approximately 2,500 pages on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19752"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

  * "ISO/IEC 19752" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that may contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization)

- Two types of replacement cartridge are available. One is the same type as the included cartridge, and the other is the one which has a different lifetime. For details on the replacement toner cartridges, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2.
- A USB cable is only supplied with the printer for countries and regions of Asia. In other countries and regions, prepare according to the specifications of your computer. Use a USB cable with the following symbol.

- Canon Font Manager is included in the [Canonfm] folder on the User Manual CD-ROM.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

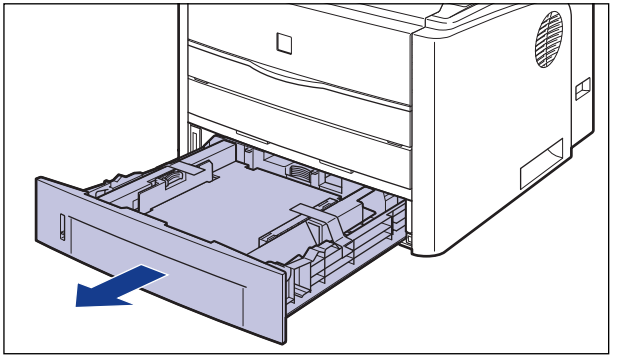
# Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site

After securing an installation site, carry the printer unit to the installation site. When carrying the printer, carry it after pulling out the paper cassette.

IMPORTANT

- When installing the optional paper feeder, install it at the installation site before carrying the printer to the installation site. For details on installing the paper feeder, see "Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-2.
- Secure sufficient space around the printer at the installation site so that you can install the optional accessories and connect cables.

## 1 Pull out the paper cassette.

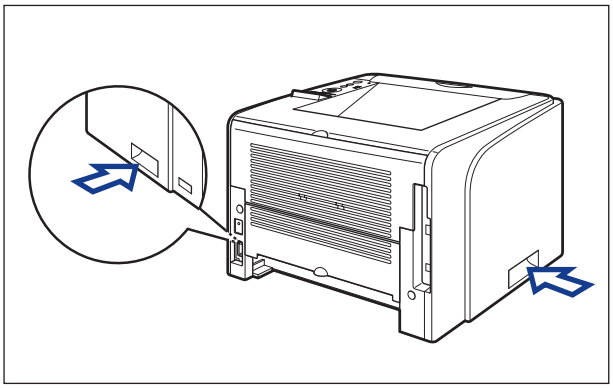


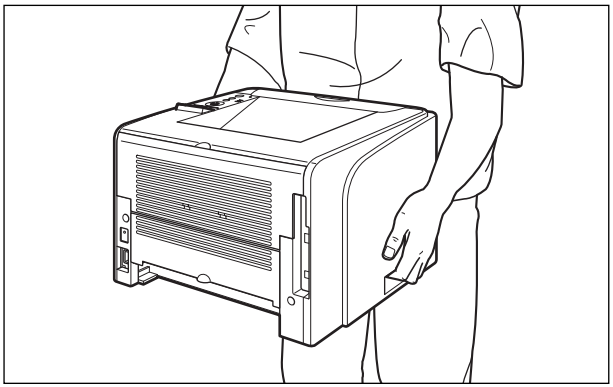


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2 Carry the printer unit to the installation site.

From the front side, securely hold the printer by the lift handles located on the lower portion of the printer with both hands.





**CAUTION**

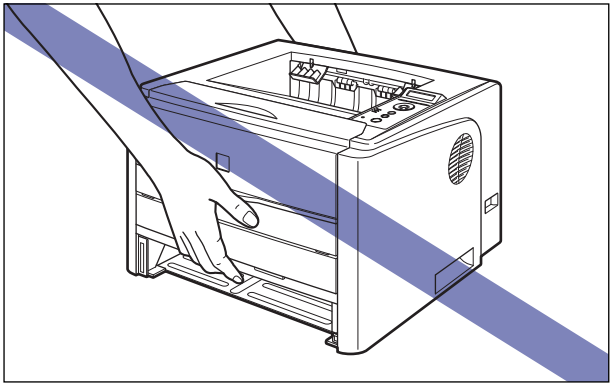
- **This printer weighs approximately 11 kg without the paper cassette and the toner cartridge installed. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.**

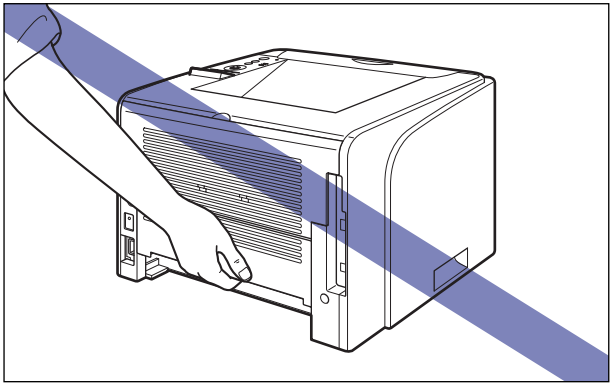




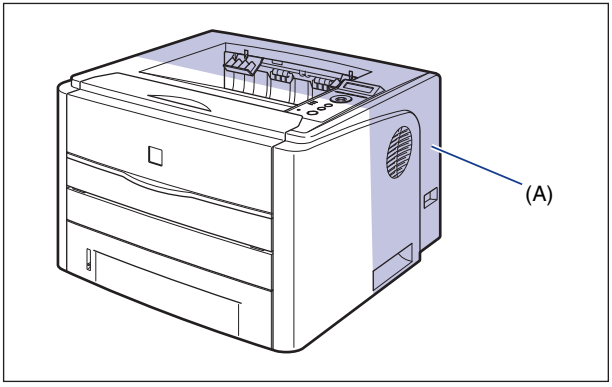
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Be sure not to hold the printer by the front portion, back portion, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**





- **The back portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to get off-balanced when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

- When taking out the printer, secure sufficient space around the printer.
- Carry the printer with the tape that secures the front cover, manual feed slot cover, and duplex unit cover attached.

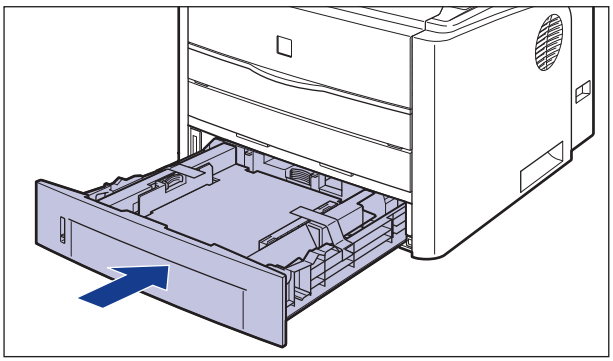
## 3 Put the printer down carefully at the installation site.

**CAUTION**

**Put the printer down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.**

## 4 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Removing the Packing Materials

This printer is provided with tape and a packing material to be protected from excessive vibrations and shocks during delivery. Remove the tape and packing material after the printer is carried to the installation site.

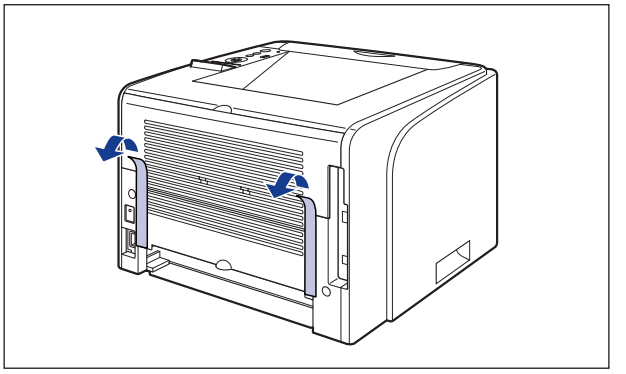
IMPORTANT

- If there is any packing material remaining inside the paper cassette, this may result in misfeeds or damage to the printer when operating the printer. Be sure to remove all the packing materials following the procedure.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for relocation or maintenance. Keep them where they will not get lost.

NOTE

The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

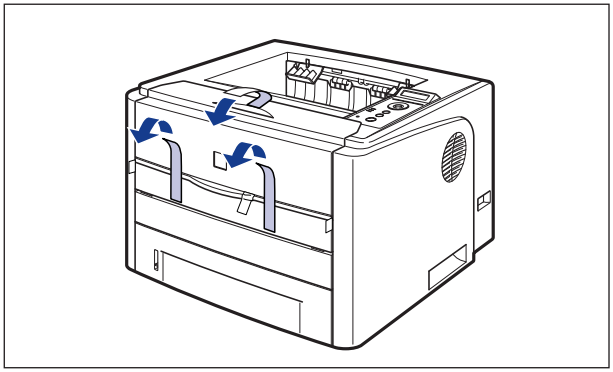
## 1 Remove the tape attached to the printer (2 locations).



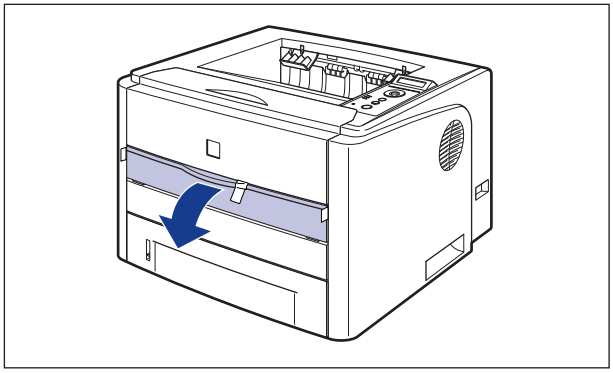


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

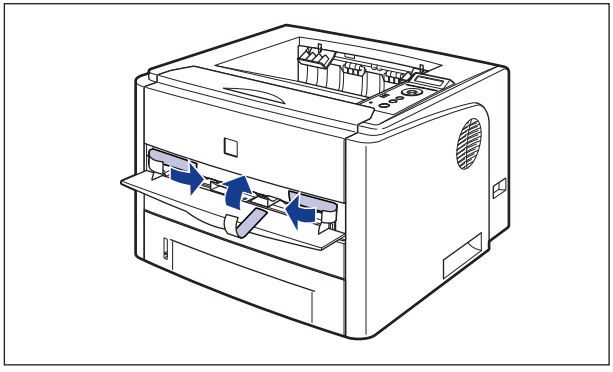
**2** **Remove the tape attached to the printer (3 locations).**



**3** **Open the manual feed slot cover.**



**4** **Remove the tape attached to the printer (3 locations).**

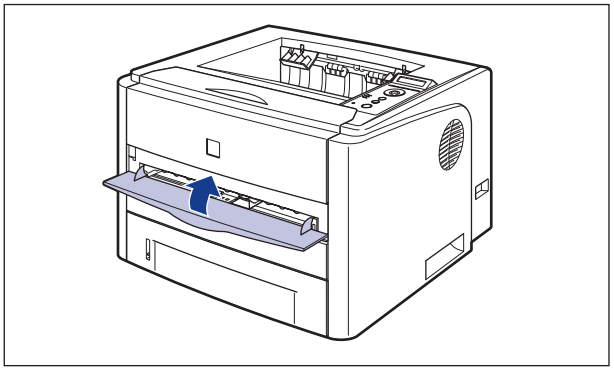




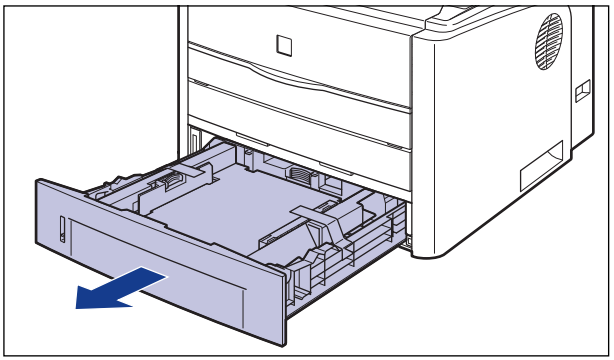


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 5 Close the manual feed slot cover.

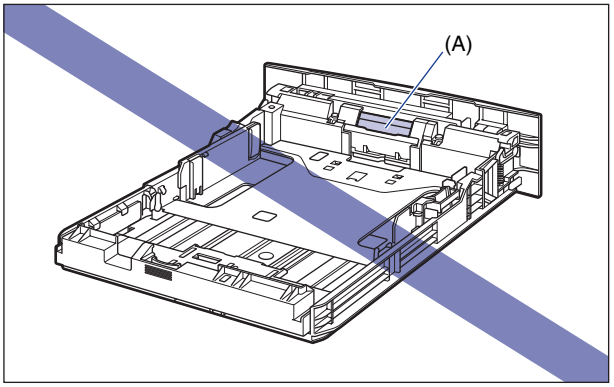


## 6 Pull out the paper cassette.



IMPORTANT

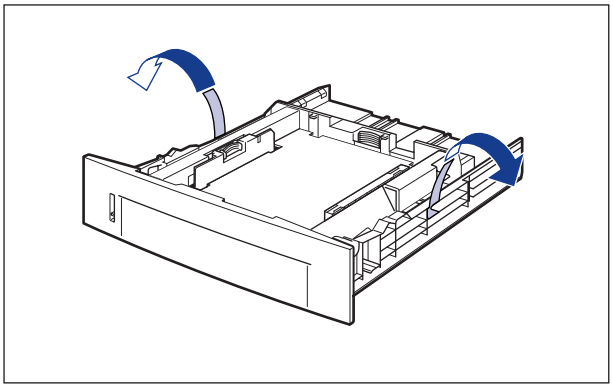
Do not touch the black rubber pad (A) in the paper cassette. This may result in misfeeds.



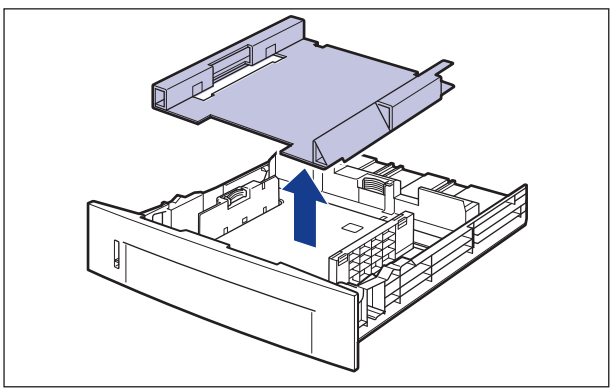



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**7** **Remove the tape that secures the packing material in the paper cassette (2 locations).**



**8** **Remove the packing material in the paper cassette.**



IMPORTANT

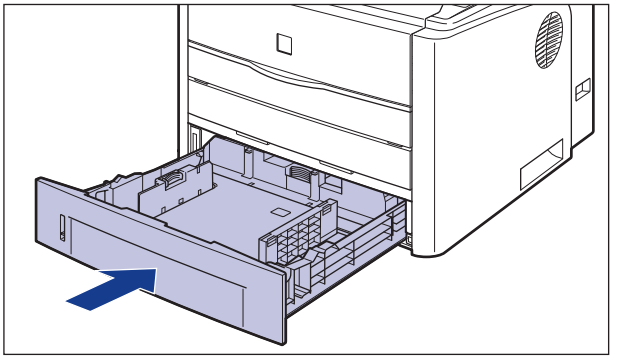
The paper cassette is provided with a packing material. Be sure to take out the paper cassette to remove the packing material.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 9 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Installing the Toner Cartridge

For details on the procedure for installing the toner cartridge, see "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-7.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Loading Paper

By default, this printer feeds paper from two paper sources: the paper cassette (Cassette 1) and manual feed slot. Also, paper can be fed from up to 3 paper sources by installing the optional paper feeder (Cassette 2).

For details on the procedure for loading paper or installing the optional paper feeder in the printer, see the following directions.

- When loading paper in the paper cassette
  See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-21
- When loading paper in the manual feed slot
  See "Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-38
- When installing the optional paper feeder in the printer
  See "Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-2
- When loading paper in the paper cassette of the paper feeder
  See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-21


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Connecting the Cables

## Connecting the Power Cord

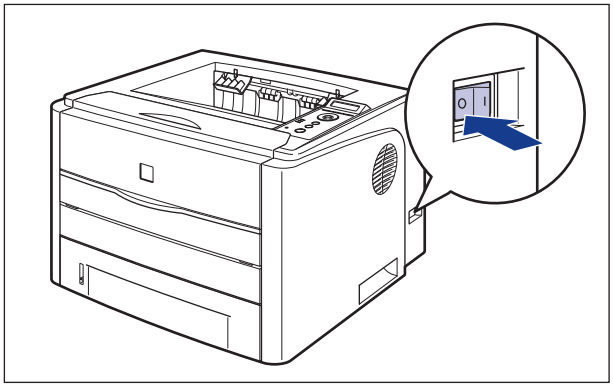
This section describes the procedure for connecting the power cord. When connecting the power cord, see "Important Safety Instructions," on p. xvi.

IMPORTANT

- One AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- Do not connect this printer to an uninterruptible power source. This may cause printer malfunction or breakdown at the occurrence of a power failure.

### 1 Make sure that the power switch of the printer is OFF.

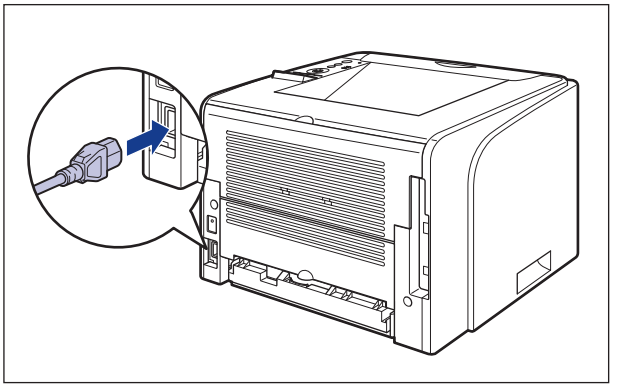
The printer is OFF when "○" of the power switch is pressed.



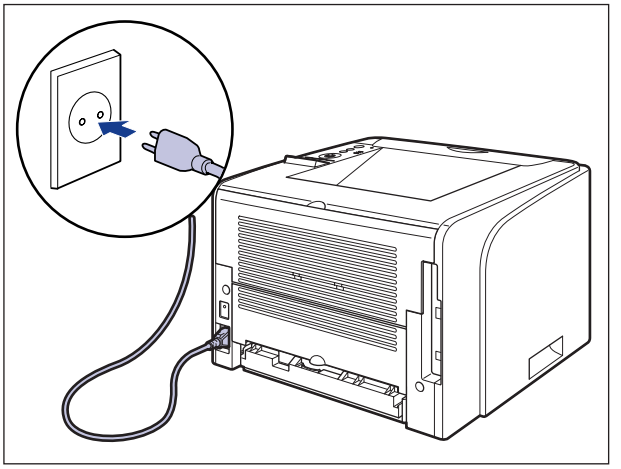


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2 Plug the supplied power cord into the power socket.



## 3 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.



NOTE

The form of the supplied power cord may differ from the one in the above illustration.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Connecting to a Computer

This section describes how to connect the printer to a computer and network.

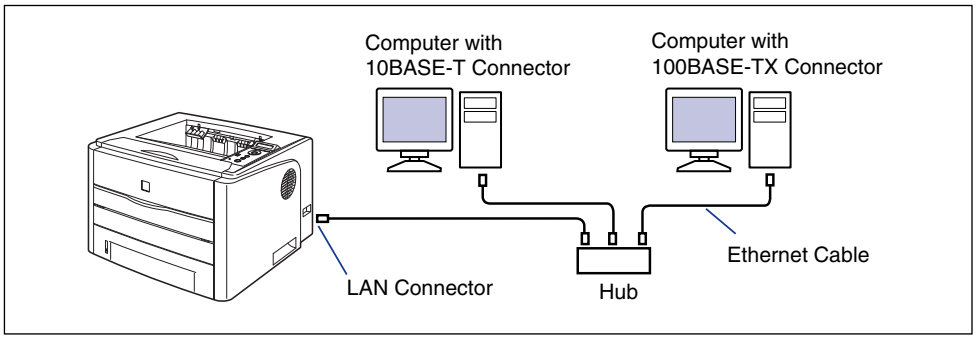
This printer is equipped with a LAN connector and USB connector.

## Using a LAN Cable

By connecting the printer to a network such as Ethernet to be shared on the network, you can use the printer from a computer on the network. You can use UNIX, Windows, Mac OS, and other operating systems.

This printer includes a print server that supports 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX and is compatible with the TCP/IP, AppleTalk (EtherTalk), and SMB protocols.

Connect the LAN connector on this printer and a hub port with a Category 5 twisted pair cable. Have cables or a hub ready as needed. For compatible cables and hubs, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.




**CAUTION**

**Before connecting the network cable to the printer, be sure to turn the printer OFF, and then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. Failure to observe these steps may result in an electrical shock.**

IMPORTANT

If more than one devices are connected to an AppleTalk network, turn on each device at an interval of ten seconds or longer.

NOTE

- This printer recognizes the type of Ethernet (100BASE-TX or 10BASE-T) automatically.
- If both 100BASE-TX devices and 10BASE-T devices are on the same network, a device such as a switching hub that supports both 100BASE-TX and 10BASE-T is required. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

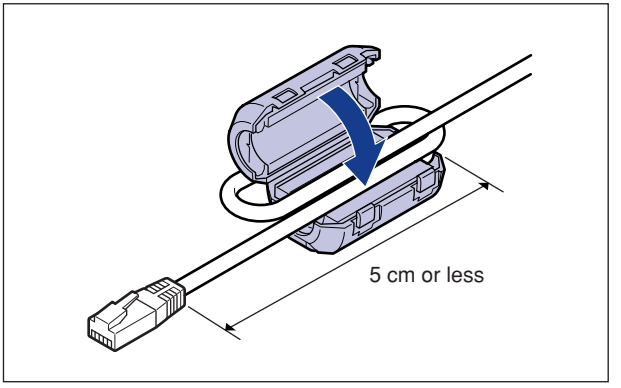


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- If you connected this printer to a network, check the MAC address of the print server with Configuration Page Print, and then configure the network operating system (UNIX, etc.) and print server. For more details, see "Network Guide".

## 1 Attach the ferrite core to the LAN cable as shown in the figure.

Attach the ferrite core at 5 cm or less from the end of the connector connected to the printer.

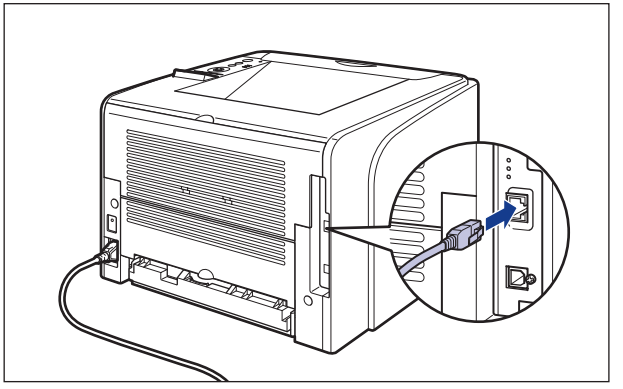



NOTE

A ferrite core is supplied with the printer.

## 2 Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector.

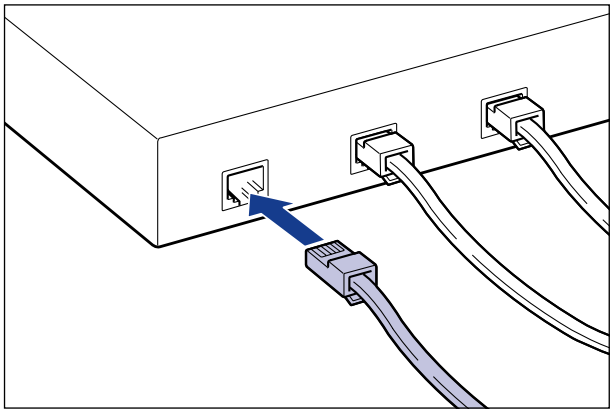
Connect a LAN cable that is compatible with the LAN connector of the network board according to the network.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### 3 Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.



**● Installing the Software**

After connecting the LAN cable, install the software for this printer. For more details, see "Driver Guide".

IMPORTANT

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

## *Using a USB Cable*

Connect the printer to a computer equipped with a USB port using a USB cable.

**WARNING**

**When plugging or unplugging the USB cable when the power plug is plugged in an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.**

IMPORTANT

- Do not plug or unplug the USB cable while the computer and printer are ON, as this may result in damage to the printer.
- This printer uses bi-directional communication. Operation of the printer when connected via unidirectional communication equipment has not been tested, and as a result, Canon cannot guarantee printer operation when the printer is connected using unidirectional print servers, USB hubs or switching devices.





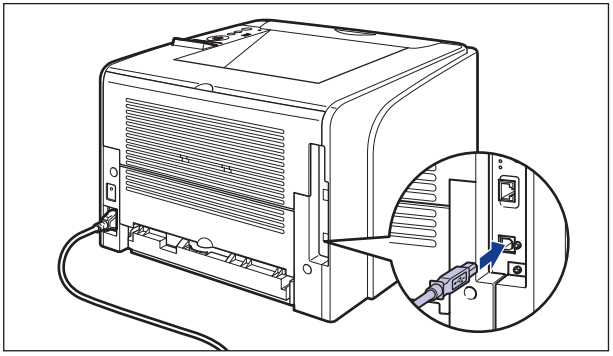
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

- The appropriate USB interface varies depending on the operating system of the connected computer as follows. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
  - Windows 98/Me: USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
  - Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
  - Mac OS X 10.3.2 or earlier: USB Full-Speed (USB 1.1 equivalent)
  - Mac OS X 10.3.3 or later: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
- When you connect this printer to a computer with a USB cable, use a computer with manufacturer's guarantee of USB proper operation.
- A USB cable is only supplied with the printer for countries and regions of Asia. In other countries and regions, prepare according to the specifications of your computer. Use a USB cable with the following symbol.

## 1 Make sure that the printer and computer are OFF.

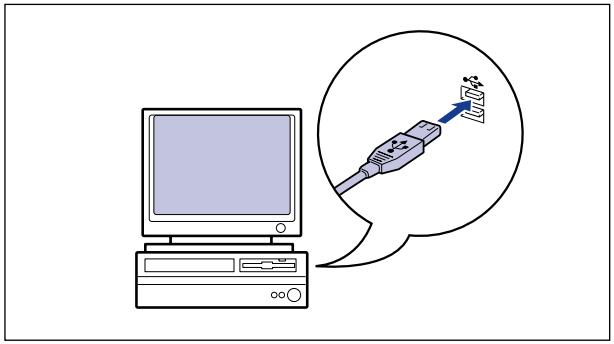
## 2 Connect the B-type (square) end of the USB cable to the USB connector on the rear side of the printer.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 3 Connect the A-type (flat) end of the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.



NOTE

If you are not sure about the USB cable that is supported by the computer you are using, contact the store where you purchased the computer.

### ● Installing the Software

After connecting the USB cable, install the software for this printer. For more details, see "Driver Guide".

IMPORTANT

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Turning the Printer ON and Checking the Printer Operation

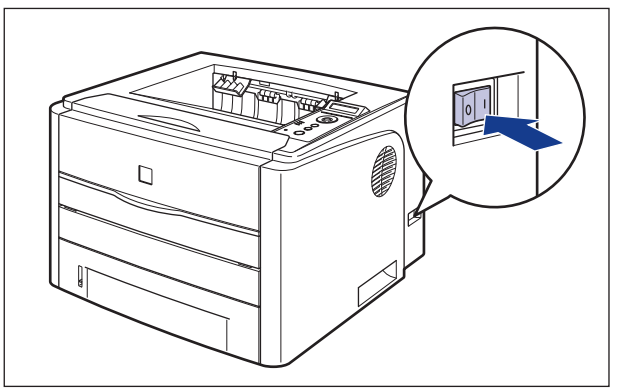
This section describes the procedures for turning the printer ON and checking the printer operation.

## Turning the Printer ON

IMPORTANT

- Do not turn the power ON immediately after turning it OFF. If you want to turn the printer ON again after turning it OFF, wait at least 10 seconds after turning the printer OFF before turning it ON again.
- If the printer does not operate properly or an error message appears, see "When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly," on p. 2-32.
- When turning the power ON, make sure that no paper is loaded in the manual feed slot. If the power is turned ON when any paper is loaded in the manual feed slot, this may result in paper jams.
- Be sure to set the paper cassette in the printer before you turn the power ON for the first time after you install the printer.
- Although a sheet of blank paper is output when you turn the power ON for the first time after you install the printer, this is not an error.

### 1 Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.

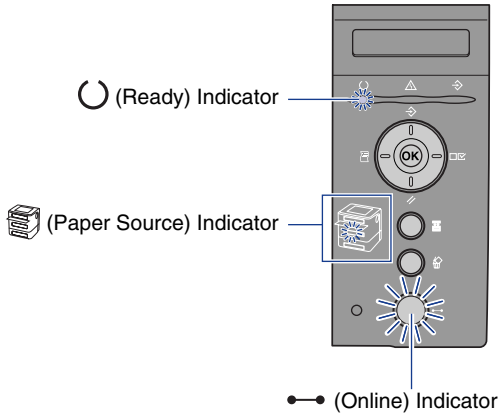


The indicators and display on the control panel come on, and the printer initiates a self-diagnostic test on the printer unit and optional accessories.

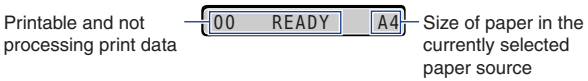


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If no abnormality is found during the self-diagnostic test, the (Online) indicator, (Ready) indicator and (Paper Source) indicator for the currently selected paper source come on, <00 READY> appears in the display, and the printer is ready to print.




The following information is displayed in the display.




## Registering a Paper Size

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette in CASSETTE1 SIZE or CASSETTE2 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. When loading paper in the manual feed slot, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot in SLOT PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu.

For more details on the procedure for registering a paper size, see the following directions.

- When registering the size of the paper in the paper cassette
  See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-34
- When registering the size of the paper in the manual feed slot
  See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-46





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Checking the Operations with Configuration Page Print

Before using the printer for the first time, be sure to perform Configuration Page Print to check the operations using the following procedure. Configuration Page Print prints printer information such as a list of the setting values and the number of the total print pages.

NOTE

- Configuration Page Print is designed to be printed on A4 size paper. Load a sheet of A4 size paper in the paper cassette or manual feed slot.
- The settings specified by the menu of the printer's control panel are reflected to Configuration Page Print. For example, when the automatic 2-sided printing function is specified, Configuration Page Print will be printed with two pages on both sides of paper. However, always a sheet of paper is printed regardless of the number of copies.

## *Printing Configuration Page Print*

Configuration Page Print can be printed using the following procedure.

### 1 Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.

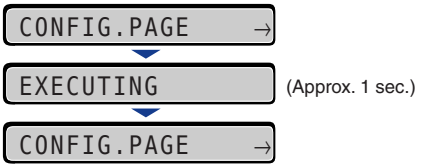
### 2 Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press the ⊷ (Online) key.

### 3 Press the (Utility) key.

CONFIG.PAGE is displayed in the display.

### 4 Press [OK].




(Approx. 1 sec.)

Configuration Page Print is printed.



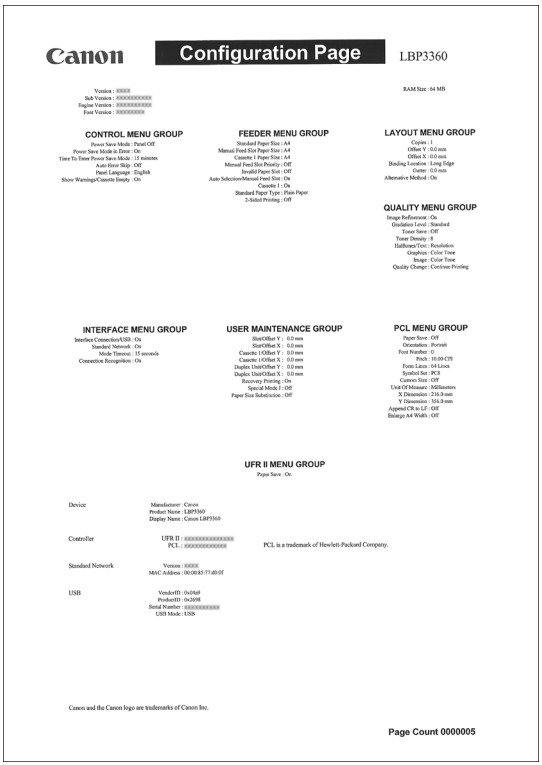
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Contents of Configuration Page Print

Configuration Page Print prints information as shown in the following figure. Configuration Page Print allows you to confirm information such as a list of the setting values specified in the printer function menu, the versions of the software and hardware installed on the printer, and the number of the total print pages. You can check the number of the total print pages using "Page Count" on the lower right of Configuration Page Print.

**IMPORTANT**

This is a sample of Configuration Page Print. The contents may partially differ from the Configuration Page Print printed by your printer.








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly

If the printer does not operate even after turnig it ON or print Configuration Page Print properly, the following causes are conceivable.

| Symptom | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| The printer cannot be turned ON. | The power plug is unplugged from the AC power outlet. | Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet. |
| | There is a break in the power cord. | If the printer is turned ON after replacing the power cord with the one that is of the same type and is used for other device, there is a break in the power cord. In this case, purchase a new power cord and replace it with the broken one. |
| The indicators on the control panel do not come on. | The printer is not turned ON. | Turn the printer ON. |
| | The printer is in Power Save Mode. | The printer will be ready to print after you send print data or press any key on the control panel. |
| The printer does not operate. | The printer is offline. | Press the ⟷ (Online) key to turn on the ⟷ (Online) indicator. |
| | The interface cable is disconnected. | Connect the interface cable firmly to the interface connectors on the computer and printer unit. |
| A paper jam occurs each time you print. | The amount of the paper loaded in the paper cassette or manual feed slot exceeds the load limitation. | Reduce the amount of paper to within the load limitation and print again. |
| | Paper is not loaded properly in the paper cassette or manual feed slot. | Load the paper properly and print again. |
| | Unusable paper is loaded in the paper cassette or manual feed slot. | Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. |
| | There is still jammed paper inside the printer. | Remove any jammed paper and print again. |



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| Symptom | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Nothing is printed on the paper. | Multiple sheets of paper were fed at a time. | Align the paper stack in the paper cassette properly and load it again. |
| | The toner cartridge was installed with the sealing tape still attached. | Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, pull out the sealing tape, and then reinstall the toner cartridge. |
| The ⚠ (Message) indicator is on and a message is displayed in the display. | Some problem has occurred. | See "Message List" (p. 8-27) and solve the problem. |

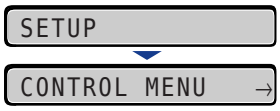


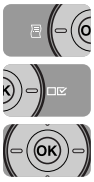
## Changing the Language Used in the Display

The default value of the language used in the display is [ENGLISH].

You can change the display language to [FRENCH], [GERMAN], [ITALIAN], or [SPANISH] using the following procedure.

### 1 Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.

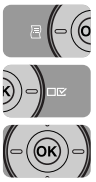


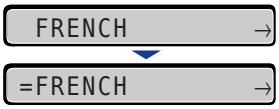
### 2 Select CONTROL MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

### 3 Select PANEL LANGUAGE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals



**4 Select the display language using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**




The display language is changed.

## Turning the Printer OFF

Turn the printer OFF using the following procedure.

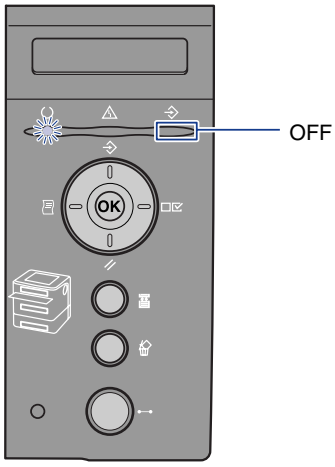
IMPORTANT

- If the printer is connected to a network, make sure that other computers are not sending print data to the printer before turning the printer OFF.
- If you turn the printer OFF when the (Job) indicator is on, all the print data remaining in the printer memory will be erased. If there is any necessary print data remaining in the printer, wait until it is output, or press the (Reset) key in the offline state and then select FORM FEED to output the data before turning the printer OFF.
- Do not turn the power OFF when the printer is in any of the following status:
  - During printing
  - While the printer is running a self-diagnostic test immediately after turning the power ON
  - While a message informing you that the NVRAM is being initialized or being written is displayed
  - While the message <02 WARMING UP> is displayed

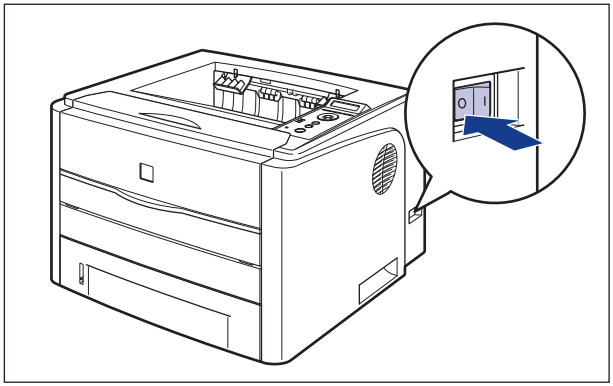


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**1** **Make sure that the (Job) indicator is off.**




**2** **Press "○" of the power switch on the printer.**





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1

CHAPTER

# Before Using the Printer

This chapter describes the [illegible] and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Printer . . . . . 1-6
Control Panel Keys . . . . . 1-7
Display . . . . . 1-8
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Power Saving (Power Save Mode)

You can reduce power consumption efficiently by using Power Save Mode when the printer is idle or not in use.

There are the following two kinds of Power Save Mode.

NOTE

- To configure the printer so that it does not enter Power Save Mode, set POWER SAVE MODE (See p. 6-10) to OFF.
- To contigure the printer so that it dose not enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), set PWR SAVE IN ERR (See p. 6-11) to OFF.

## ■ Power Save Mode 1 (Panel Off Mode) ... Power-saving effect: Small

The printer enters Power Save Mode 1 when it is in the following condition.

| Condition |
|---|
| POWER SAVE MODE is set to DEEP SLEEP or PANEL OFF. |
| The panel operation has not been performed and no data has been sent from the computer for the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME (See p. 6-11).<br>(You can select 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, or 180 minutes for POWER SAVE TIME, and the default value is 15 minutes.) |

NOTE

- When the printer enters Power Save Mode 1, only the ◯ (Ready) indicator and Power indicator come on. However, when the printer is offline, only the ⚠ (Message) indicator and Power indicator come on.
- Power Save Mode 1 can be released when the printer is in any of the following status:
  - When any key on the control panel is pressed
  - When an error is occurring
  - When the printer receives data from the computer (Only when the printer is online)
  - When the settings for [Utility Menu] are specified in the Remote UI
  - When the settings for [Device Control] are specified in the Remote UI



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Power Save Mode 2 (Deep Sleep Mode) ... Power-saving effect: Large

The printer enters Power Save Mode 2 when it is in the following condition.

| Condition |
|---|
| POWER SAVE MODE is set to DEEP SLEEP. |
| The printer has already entered Power Save Mode 1. |
| USB in I/F CONNECTION is set to OFF. |
| APPLETALK in NETWORK MENU is set to OFF. |
| SMB SERVER in NETWORK MENU is set to OFF*. |
| There is no job on the print queue. |
| The printer has not communicated on the network for more than 15 seconds. |

* Even when SMB SERVER is set to ON, the printer enters Power Save Mode 2 if the "server name" for SMB is not entered.

IMPORTANT

Even if POWER SAVE MODE is set to PANEL OFF or OFF, the printer enters Power Save Mode 2 when [Deep Sleep] is executed in [Device Control] in the Remote UI.

NOTE

- When the printer enters Power Save Mode 2, only the Power indicator comes on.
- Power Save Mode 2 can be released when the printer is in any of the following status:
  - When the ⊷ (Online) key on the control panel is pressed
  - When the printer receives data from the computer (Only when the printer is online)
  - The settings for [Utility Menu] are specified in the Remote UI
- The printer does not enter Power Save Mode 2 in the state where a DHCP communication can be done.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Online and Offline

When the printer can receive data from the computer and print the data, the printer is in the state of "Online", and when the printer is disconnected with the computer and cannot receive data, the printer is in the state of "Offline".

To perform the settings for each menu using the control panel, switch the printer status as follows:

O: The status that you can enter the menu
X: The status that you cannot enter the menu

| | When the printer is online | When the printer is offline |
|---|---|---|
| SETUP Menu | ○* | ○ |
| SELECT FEEDER Menu | ○ | ○ |
| RESET Menu | ○ | ○ |
| JOB Menu | ○ | x |
| UTILITY Menu | ○ | x |

* The USER MAIN. options cannot be specified when the printer is online.

## Placing the Printer Online

When printing from the computer, the printer has to be online. Before printing, make sure that the printer is online. If not, place the printer online using the following procedure. The printer comes online automatically after you turn it ON.

### 1 Press the ⊷ (Online) key.

The ⊷ (Online) indicator comes on, and the printer is ready to print.

IMPORTANT

When an error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), the printer does not come online. Eliminate the cause of the error before you place the printer online.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

If the printer has entered Power Save Mode 1, the ⊷ (Online) indicator is off even when the printer is online, and only the ◯ (Ready) indicator and Power indicator are on. If the printer has entered Power Save Mode 2, only the Power indicator is on. If the printer receives data while it is in Power Save Mode, the mode is released, the ⊷ (Online) indicator comes on, and the printer is ready to print.

## Placing the Printer Offline

To configure the printer so that it does not receive data from the computer or specify the settings for all the items in the SETUP menu, place the printer offline using the following procedure.

### 1 Press the ⊷ (Online) key.

The ⊷ (Online) indicator goes off, allowing you to specify the settings on the control panel.

IMPORTANT

This printer comes online automatically if left in the offline state for five minutes or longer. However, when an error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), or while you are performing any setting, such as selecting the menu functions or a paper source, or when specifying the paper size, the printer does not come online.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Canceling a Job

When a part of print data has already been sent to the printer, the print job may not be finished even if you cancel the job from the computer. In this case, you can output the data to finish the printing process of the printer or cancel the job being processed in the printer or all the jobs.



## Outputting Data (Forced Output)

When a job is canceled from the computer or the data is less than one page, the data may remain in the printer memory, and the job may not be completed properly. As long as the printer remains in this state, you cannot print the next job because the printer cannot receive the next data. In this case, force the printer to output the print data using the following procedure.

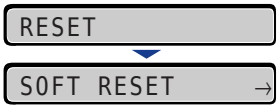
IMPORTANT

- Print data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver cannot be output.
- If you have output data, the data being printed is deleted. Print the data from the computer again as needed.
- You cannot output data while the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on. If you want to delete the received data, perform a soft reset. (See p. 3-8)

NOTE

- The → (Job) indicator is on when any print data remains in the printer memory or when no print data remains in the printer but a job has not yet been completed.
- If MODE TIMEOUT is specified for the job, even data less than one page is output when the specified time has elapsed (Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver is not output.). MODE TIMEOUT for a job is set to 15 seconds in the default settings.
- If the → (Job) indicator does not go off even after outputting the data, perform a soft reset. (See p. 3-8)

### 1 Press the // (Reset) key.




The RESET menu is displayed.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2 Select FORM FEED using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

The data remaining in the memory is printed.

# Canceling a Job (Cancel Job)

If you want to cancel the job currently being printed, perform "Cancel Job" using the following procedure. A job cancel allows you to cancel the job currently being received or processed. This option does not affect the next print data or the jobs that have not been processed yet.

**IMPORTANT**

- Cancel the job while the printer is processing the data (While the (Job) indicator is on or blinking). No job is canceled by pressing the (Cancel Job) key when the (Job) indicator is off.
- The data that has already been processed and is being printed (started to be output) cannot be canceled. In this case, the next print data may be canceled.
- When there is any print data sent from a printer driver other than that for this printer, multiple data may be canceled.

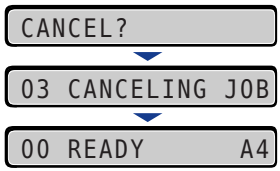
**NOTE**

When canceling a job you may not be able to cancel the job even if <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed.

Cancel a job using the following procedure. When canceling a job be sure that the (Job) indicator is on or blinking (the job that you want to cancel is being received or being processed).

## 1 Press the (Cancel Job) key.

## 2 When canceling the job, press [OK].




<03 CANCELING JOB> appears, and the print data being processed is canceled. The job is canceled when <00 READY> appears.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

You cannot operate the printer while <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed.

# Canceling the Process Currently Being Performed (Soft Reset)

If you want to cancel the process currently being performed, perform [Soft Reset] using the following procedure. A soft reset deletes the print data received by all the interfaces, the job being processed, and the print data in the printer memory.

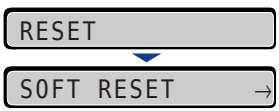
IMPORTANT

- Be sure to operate the printer from the computer to cancel printing before canceling the job from the printer (Soft Reset).
- When a soft reset is performed, the data being printed and the data being received by all the interfaces is deleted. Therefore, perform printing from the computer again as needed.
- The data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so this operation does not affect the data from other computers when performing this procedure.

NOTE

Hard resets delete all the registered files such as the form data saved in the RAM of the printer, but soft resets do not delete them.

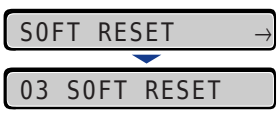
## 1 Press the // (Reset) key.




The RESET menu is displayed.

## 2 Select SOFT RESET using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

Holding down the [OK] key 3 seconds or more is the operation for HARD RESET.




When <03 SOFT RESET> disappears, the soft reset is completed.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

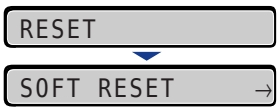
# Canceling All the Jobs (Hard Reset)

When you want to delete all the jobs and data sent to memory for some reason, perform [Hard Reset] using the following procedure. A hard reset deletes the print data received by all the interfaces, the job being processed, and the print data in the printer memory.

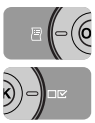
IMPORTANT

- If the printer is reset while it is receiving data, the data that has not yet been sent to the memory will be sent after the reset. However, the data may not be printed properly.
- The data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so this operation does not affect the data from other computers when performing this procedure.

## 1 Press the // (Reset) key.




The RESET menu is displayed.



## 2 Select SOFT RESET using [◄] and [►].

## 3 Hold down [OK] until HARD RESET is displayed, then release the button.

Hold down the button (approximately 3 seconds) until HARD RESET is displayed. Holding down the button less than 3 seconds is the operation for SOFT RESET.

When <03 HARD RESET> disappears, the hard reset is completed.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1 Before Using the Printer

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the printer's features and the names of its parts. It also explains how to set up the printer, how to load paper and toner cartridges, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Checking the Package Contents . . . . . 1-8
Selecting a Location for the Installation Site . . . . . 1-9
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Paper Requirements

## Usable Paper

To ensure optimum performance, use only paper that falls within the specifications in the following lists. Using inappropriate paper may result in deterioration in print quality or paper jams.

IMPORTANT

- Print speed may drop depending on the settings for the paper size, paper type, and total print pages.
- When continuously printing the paper of 272 mm long or less, the safety function that prevents damages caused by heat may slow the print speed down in stages. (The print speed may be as slow as approximately 4 ppm.)

### *Paper Size*

The following shows the paper sizes that can be used with this printer. The symbol ◎ indicates the paper that can be used for 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing, the symbol ○ indicates the paper that can be used for only 1-sided printing, and the symbol X indicates the paper that cannot be used.

| Paper Size | Paper Source | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Manual Feed Slot | Cassette 1 | Cassette 2 (Optional) |
| A4 | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ |
| B5 | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| A5 | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Legal | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ |
| Letter | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ |
| Executive | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Statement | ○ | x | x |
| 16K | ○ | x | x |
| Custom Size | ○*1 | ○*2 | ○*2 |


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| Paper Size | Paper Source | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Manual Feed Slot | Cassette 1 | Cassette 2 (Optional) |
| Envelope | | | |
| Envelope DL 110.0 mm x 220.0 mm | ○ | x | x |
| Envelope COM10 104.7 mm x 241.3 mm | ○ | x | x |
| Envelope C5 162.0 mm x 229.0 mm | ○ | x | x |
| Envelope Monarch 98.4 mm x 190.5 mm | ○ | x | x |
| Envelope B5 176.0 mm x 250.0 mm | ○ | x | x |
| Index Card 76.2 mm x 127.0 mm | ○ | x | x |

*1 You can load paper of the following custom sizes.
-When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm
-When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 127.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 215.9 mm

*2 You can load paper of the following custom sizes.
-When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm
-When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 210.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 215.9 mm

## Paper Type

The following shows the paper types that can be used with this printer. The symbol ◎ indicates the paper that can be used for 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing, the symbol ○ indicates the paper that can be used for only 1-sided printing, and the symbol X indicates the paper that cannot be used.

| Paper Type | Paper Source | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Manual Feed Slot | Cassette 1 | Cassette 2 (Optional) |
| Plain paper (60 - 90 g/m$^2$) | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ |
| Heavy paper (91 - 120 g/m$^2$) | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ |
| Heavy paper (121 - 163 g/m$^2$) | ○ | x | x |
| Transparency | ○ | x | x |
| Label | ○ | x | x |
| Index Card | ○ | x | x |
| Envelope | ○ | x | x |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Plain paper

This printer can print plain paper that is 76.2 to 215.9 mm wide, 127.0 to 355.6 mm long, and that weighs between 60 and 90 g/m$^2$, including the standard paper sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, and 16K.
A4, Legal, and Letter sizes can be used for automatic 2-sided printing.

## ■ Heavy paper

This printer can print heavy paper that is 76.2 to 215.9 mm wide, 127.0 to 355.6 mm long, and that weighs between 91 and 163 g/m$^2$, including the standard paper sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, and 16K.
Heavy paper that weighs between 91 and 120 g/m$^2$ can be loaded in the paper cassettes and manual feed slot. Heavy paper that weighs between 121 and 163 g/m$^2$ can be loaded in the manual feed slot. Also, paper at a size of A4, Legal, or Letter that weighs between 91 and 120 g/m$^2$ is available for automatic 2-sided printing.

## ■ Transparency

This printer can print A4 and Letter size transparencies.
You can feed a transparency from the manual feed slot.

## ■ Label

This printer can print A4 and Letter size labels.
You can feed a label from the manual feed slot.

IMPORTANT

Do not use the labels in the following conditions. Using inappropriate labels may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
- Peeled labels or partly used labels
- Coated labels that are easily peeled off from the backing sheet
- Labels with uneven adhesive

## ■ Index Card

This printer can print Index Card.
You can feed an Index Card from the manual feed slot.

IMPORTANT

If Index Card is curled, flatten the curls by warping it in the opposite direction before loading it.



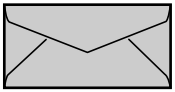


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

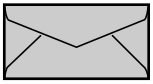
## ■ Envelope

The envelopes that can be used with this printer are as follows.
You can feed an envelope from the manual feed slot.

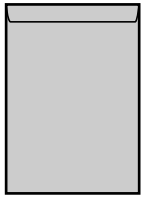
Envelope DL
(110.0 mm x 220.0 mm)



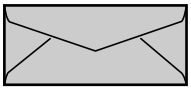
Envelope Monarch
(98.4 mm x 190.5 mm)



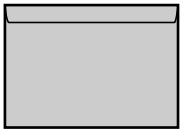
Envelope B5
176.0 mm x 250.0 mm



Envelope COM10
(104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)



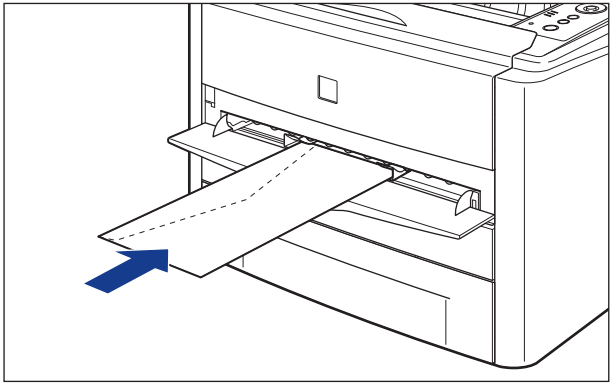
Envelope C5
(162.0 mm x 229.0 mm)



* You cannot use envelopes at sizes of DL, COM 10, Monarch, and C5 that have a flap on the short edge.

### IMPORTANT

- Do not use the following types of envelopes. Using inappropriate envelopes may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
  - Envelopes with fasteners or snaps
  - Envelopes with address windows
  - Envelopes with adhesive on the surface
  - Wrinkled or creased envelopes
  - Poorly manufactured envelopes in which the glued parts are uneven
  - Irregularly-shaped envelopes
- Before loading the envelopes, flatten the stack of envelopes to release any remaining air, and press the fold lines along the edges tight.
- Do not print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- When loading an envelope at a size of DL, COM10, C5, or Monarch, load it so that the flap is toward the left of the printer when viewed from the front.
  ( ⬅ : Feeding direction)

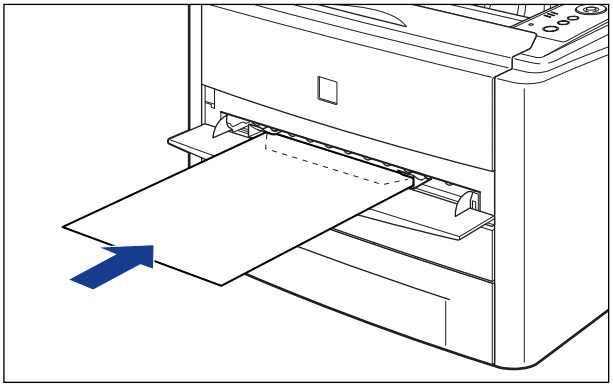






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• When printing an envelope of the Envelope B5 size, close the flap and load it so that the envelope is printed from the top (the edge with the flap).
(⬅: Feeding direction)



NOTE

When printing envelopes, they may be creased.

## Abbreviations of Paper Sizes

The following shows the abbreviations of paper sizes that are marked on the paper cassette or manual feed slot:

| Paper Size | Paper Guides |
|---|---|
| Legal | LGL |
| Letter | LTR |
| Executive | EXEC |


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

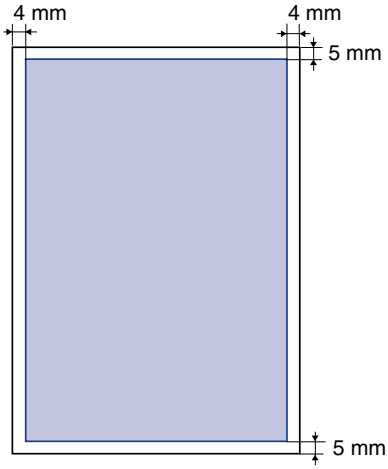
# Printable Area

The following shows the printable area of this printer. However, if you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in UFR II Printer Driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. For more details, see Help of UFR II Printer Driver.

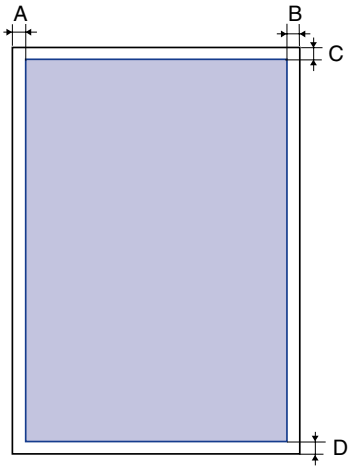
## ■ Plain Paper/Heavy Paper/Transparency/Label/Index Card

The printable areas are as follows.

• UFR II Printer Driver




• PCL5e/PCL6 Printer Driver




| Paper Size | A: Left Edge | B: Right Edge | C: Top Edge | D: Bottom Edge |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A4 | 6.1 | 6.1 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| B5 | 7.4 | 7.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| A5 | 7.0 | 7.0 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Legal | 6.4 | 6.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Letter | 6.4 | 6.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Executive | 7.4 | 7.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Statement | 6.4 | 6.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| 16K | 6.4 | 6.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Custom Size | 6.4 | 6.4 | 5.0 | 5.0 |
| Index Card | 10.0 | 10.0 | 10.0 | 10.0 |

(Unit: mm)



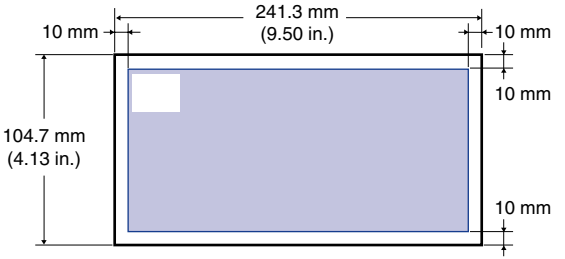


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ Envelope

You cannot print on any area within 10 mm of the edges of paper.
You may have to change the printable area before printing, depending on the application you use.

(Sample: Envelope COM10)






## Unusable Paper

To avoid problems such as paper jams and other malfunctions, the following types of paper should never be used:

IMPORTANT

- Paper that jams easily
  - Paper that is too thick or too thin
  - Irregularly-shaped paper
  - Wet or moist paper
  - Torn or damaged paper
  - Rough, extremely smooth, or glossy paper
  - Paper with binding holes or perforations
  - Curled or creased paper
  - Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
  - Labels with backing sheet that is easily peeled off
  - Paper that has already been printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the manual feed slot, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the other side of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
  - Paper with jagged edges
  - Wrinkled paper
  - Paper with the corners folded
- Paper that changes its quality at a high temperature
  - Paper that contains ink that melts, burns, evaporates or emits harmful gases at the heating temperature (approx. 270°C or 518°F) of the fixing unit
  - Heat-sensitive paper
  - Treated color paper
  - Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
  - Paper with adhesive on the surface



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Paper that causes printer malfunctions or damages the printer
  - Carbon paper
  - Paper with staples, clips, ribbons or tapes
  - Paper that has already been printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the manual feed slot, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the other side of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
- Paper that is difficult for the toner to fix onto
  - Paper with rough surfaces
  - Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
  - Paper containing thick fibers

## Storing Paper

The quality of paper may deteriorate if it is stored improperly even when the paper meets the normal specifications. Inferior paper may cause misfeeds, paper jams, or deterioration in print quality.
Observe the following guidelines when storing and handling paper:

IMPORTANT

- Store paper away from moisture since paper quality deteriorates in a moist environment.
- Paper wrappers help avoiding moisture and dryness. Keep paper in the wrapper until it is ready to be used. Store all unused paper in a wrapper.
- Store paper on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper on the floor where water and moisture can accumulate.
- Avoid physical damage to stored paper.
- Do not store paper vertically or store too many stacks of paper in one pile.
- Do not store paper in places exposed to direct sunlight or places with high or low humidity.
- If the paper storage room and work area differ from each other significantly in temperature or humidity, keep packed paper stack in the work area for at least one day prior to printing so that it can adapt to the new environment. When paper is moved to a location where the temperature or humidity differs significantly, the paper may curl or become creased.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Storing Printouts

When handling or storing printouts printed by this printer, be careful of the following points:

IMPORTANT

- Avoid storing printouts with PVC materials such as clear folders. Otherwise toner may melt and stick to the PVC material.
- Use insoluble adhesive when gluing printouts. Toner may melt when soluble adhesive is used. Before using the adhesive, test it with paper that is no longer required.
  Make sure that the printed paper is completely dry before placing one over another. Toner may melt if they are placed together half-dried.
- Store paper on a flat surface. Toner may peel when they are folded or creased.
- Avoid storing printouts at high temperatures. Otherwise toner may melt and blot.
- Put printouts in a binder when storing them for a long period of time (two years or longer). (Printouts may discolor when they are stored for a long period of time.)





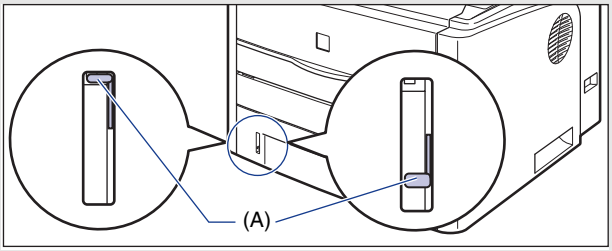
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Paper Source

This printer is supplied with two paper sources: the paper cassette (Cassette 1) and manual feed slot. By installing the optional paper feeder (Cassette 2), up to 3 paper sources can be used.

### ● Paper Level Indicator

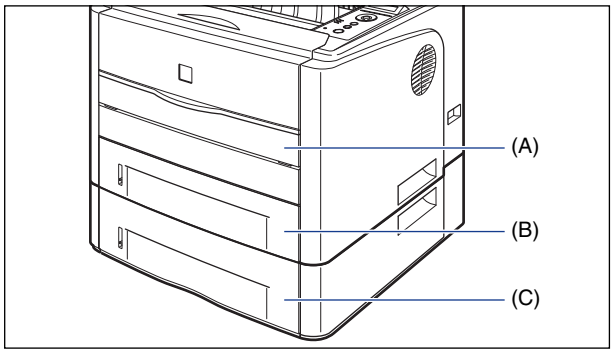
The paper cassette has a paper level indicator (A) that shows the amount of paper remaining in the cassette. If the cassette is full, the paper level indicator is at the top. Because the indicator moves down as the amount of paper drops, this gives a rough estimate of the amount of paper remaining.




## Paper Source Type

This printer has the following paper sources:

(A): Manual Feed Slot
(B): Cassette 1
(C): Cassette 2 (Optional)








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

If you are printing from Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.

## Paper Capacity for Paper Source

| Paper Type | Paper Source | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Manual Feed Slot | Cassette 1 | Cassette 2 (Optional) |
| Plain paper (80 g/m$^2$) | 1 sheet | Approx. 250 sheets | Approx. 250 sheets |
| Heavy paper (91 g/m$^2$) | 1 sheet | Approx. 200 sheets | Approx. 200 sheets |
| Heavy paper (128 g/m$^2$) | 1 sheet | x | x |
| Transparency | 1 sheet | x | x |
| Label | 1 sheet | x | x |
| Index Card | 1 sheet | x | x |
| Envelope | 1 sheet | x | x |



## Selecting a Paper Source

A paper source can be selected using the following procedure.

### ■ When printing from Windows or Macintosh

Select a paper source in the printer driver. Because the default setting for the paper selection in the printer driver is [Auto], if a paper size is specified by an application, the printer selects the paper source automatically and feeds paper from the paper source. Even when the paper source runs out of paper during printing, if paper of the same size is loaded in other paper source, the paper source is switched automatically and the paper is fed.

If you want to specify a paper source, select the paper source in the printer driver. For more details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

### ■ When printing from DOS or UNIX

When you are printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which you cannot use the printer driver, select a paper source using the control panel. The default setting for this printer's paper source is set to AUTO.

Select a paper source with the printer's control panel using the following procedure.

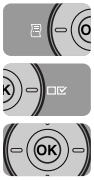
**1 Press the (Feeder Selection) key.**

PAPER SOURCE →

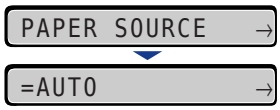


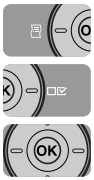
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

PAPER SOURCE is displayed in the display.

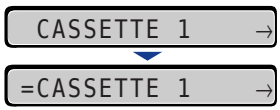


**2 Select PAPER SOURCE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**3 Select the paper source using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**




NOTE

- CASSETTE 2 is displayed only when the paper feeder is installed.
- If paper of the same size is loaded in two or more paper sources when the paper source setting is specified to be selected automatically, paper is fed from the upper paper source regardless of the status of the (Paper Source) indicators. When the paper source runs out of paper, the paper source automatically switches to other one in which paper of the same size is loaded.

## Precautions for Handling the Manual Feed Slot or Paper Cassette

Be careful of the following points when handling the manual feed slot or paper cassette.

IMPORTANT

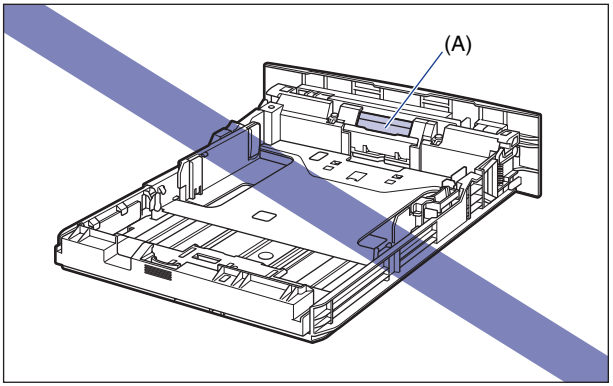
- Be sure to turn the printer ON once when loading paper in the paper cassette for the first time after installing the paper feeder.
- When any paper is in the manual feed slot, you cannot feed paper from the paper cassette. If you are printing from the paper cassette, remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.
- Do not pull out the paper cassette while the printer is printing. This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.
- Do not touch the paper in the manual feed slot or pull it out during printing. This may result in a faulty operation.
- Refill the paper cassette after all the loaded paper runs out. If the cassette is refilled when paper still remains in the cassette, it may result in misfeeds.
- Do not load paper in the manual feed slot during printing from the paper cassette. This may result in multiple sheets of paper fed at once or paper jams.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Do not touch the black rubber pad (A) in the paper cassette. This may result in misfeeds.




- Make sure that the printer is not operating and the ◯ (Ready) indicator is on when loading paper in the manual feed slot. When printing multiple copies or multiple pages from the manual feed slot, make sure that the printer is not operating and the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on before loading the second and subsequent paper. If paper is loaded in the manual feed slot while the printer is operating such as when the printer is printing or immediately after outputting paper, the loaded paper may be output without being printed, or this may result in paper jams.
- If you are printing from Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Output Trays

## Output Tray Types

This printer has two output trays: "face-down output tray" on the top of the printer unit and "face-up output slot" on the rear of the printer unit.

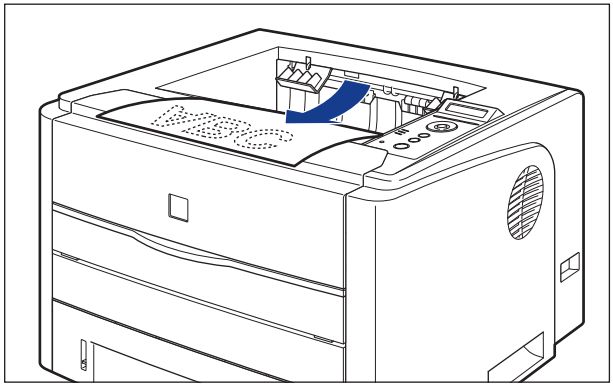
Do not switch one output tray to another during printing. This may result in paper jams.

**CAUTION**

**Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.**

### *Face-down Output Tray*

Printed paper is output to the face-down output tray with the printed side facing down.



IMPORTANT

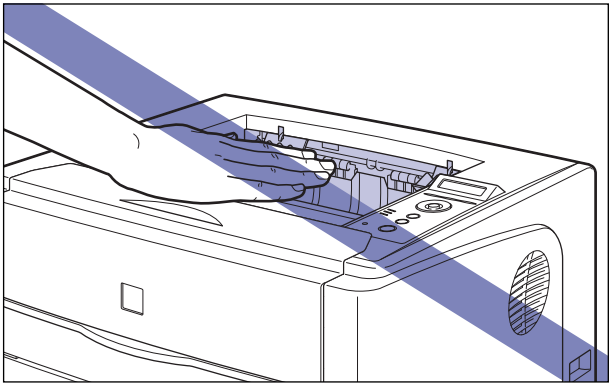
- Do not touch the paper during automatic 2-sided printing until it is completely output to the face-down output tray. In automatic 2-sided printing, the paper is partially output once after printed on its surface and is fed again to be printed on its reverse side.
- When performing automatic 2-sided printing, the printer can output paper only to the face-down output tray.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- The surroundings of the face-down output tray are hot during printing or immediately after printing. When taking out of the paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to touch the surroundings of the face-down output tray.

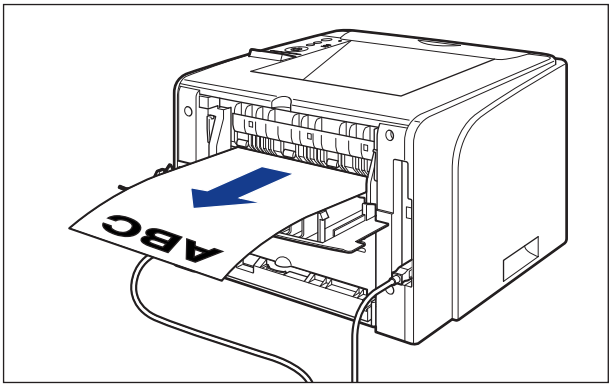


NOTE

The face-down output tray can hold up to approximately 125 sheets of plain paper (80 g/$m^2$). The paper capacity varies depending on the paper type and paper size. For more details, see "Paper Capacity of the Output Trays," on p. 4-17.

## Face-up Output Slot

Printed paper is output to the face-up output slot on the rear of the printer unit with the printed side facing up. The face-up output slot is suitable to print transparencies, labels, or envelopes which tend to curl, since the printed paper is output flattened.

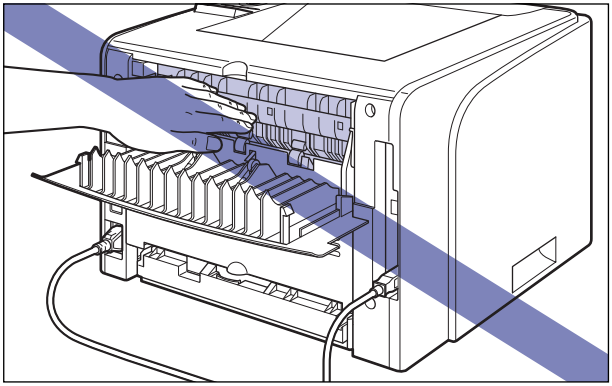



IMPORTANT

- Be sure to close the output selection cover before performing automatic 2-sided printing.
- When paper is output to the face-up output slot, take out one piece at a time each time it is output.


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- The surroundings of the face-up output slot are hot during printing or immediately after printing. When taking out of the paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to touch the surroundings of the face-up output slot.





## Paper Capacity of the Output Trays

| Paper Type | Output Tray* | |
|---|---|---|
| | Face-down Output Tray | Face-up Output Slot |
| Plain paper (80 g/m$^2$) | Approx. 125 sheets | x |
| Heavy paper (91 g/m$^2$) | Approx. 50 sheets | x |
| Heavy paper (128 g/m$^2$) | Approx. 30 sheets | 1 sheet |
| Transparency | Approx. 10 sheets | 1 sheet |
| Label | Approx. 10 sheets | 1 sheet |
| Index Card | Approx. 10 sheets | 1 sheet |
| Envelope | Approx. 10 sheets | 1 sheet |

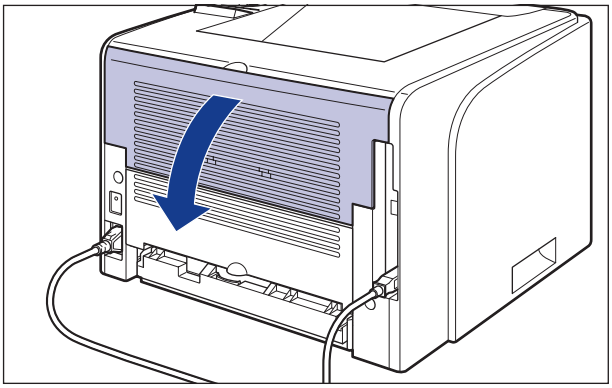
* Actual paper capacity varies depending on the installation environment, paper type and paper size.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

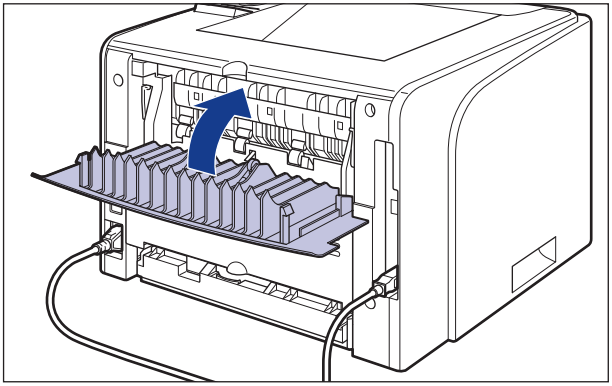
## Switching to the Face-up Output Slot

When switching an output tray to the face-up output slot, open the output selection cover as shown in the figure.



## Switching to the Face-down Output Tray

When switching an output tray to the face-down output tray, close the output selection cover as shown in the figure.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Printing from the Paper Cassette

The paper cassette can be loaded with plain paper (60 to 90 g/m$^2$), heavy paper (91 to 120 g/m$^2$) at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, and Custom Size. When the paper cassette runs out of paper, <11 NO "size" PAPER> appears in the display, or the (Paper Source) indicator blinks indicating the status. Refill the cassette.

This printer comes with a paper cassette (Cassette 1) as standard. Cassette 2 is added by installing the optional paper feeder.

When printing from the paper cassette, you need to specify the following settings.

IMPORTANT

- Match the settings for CASSETTE1 SIZE and CASSETTE2 SIZE in the SETUP menu of the printer and those in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting values for CASSETTE1 SIZE and CASSETTE2 SIZE are changed to those in the printer driver by pressing the (Online) key, allowing you to continue printing.
- If you are printing from Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.

NOTE

If you are printing from an operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, previously specify the paper source to CASSETTE 1 or CASSETTE 2. (See p. 4-12)

■ **Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette (See p. 4-21)**

■ **Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette (See p. 4-34)**

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- CASSETTE1 SIZE = the size of the paper loaded in Cassette 1
- CASSETTE2 SIZE = the size of the paper loaded in Cassette 2

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, specify the following settings in addition to CASSETTE1 SIZE and CASSETTE2 SIZE.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- STD PAPER SIZE = the size of the loaded paper (See p. 6-15)
- STD PAPER TYPE = the type of the loaded paper (See p. 6-17)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ Specifying the Paper Settings in the Printer Driver (See Driver Guide)

When printing from the printer driver, specify the following settings. For more details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

[Page Setup] Sheet
[Output Size] = the size of the loaded paper

[Paper Source] Sheet
[Paper Source] = [Cassette 1]
[Cassette 2]
[Paper Type] = [Plain Paper L]: Plain Paper (60 - 74 g/m$^2$)
[Plain Paper]: Plain Paper (75 - 90 g/m$^2$)
[Heavy Paper 1]: Heavy Paper (91 - 120 g/m$^2$)

## Precautions on Loading Paper

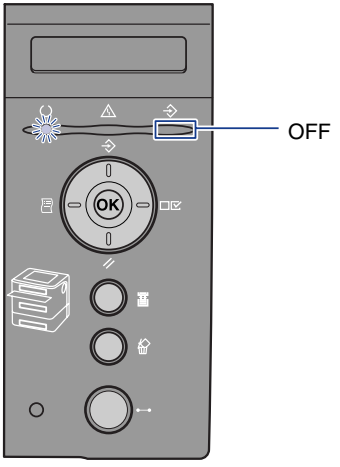


Load paper when the printer status is in any of the following. When the → (Job) indicator is blinking, the printer is printing. Do not pull out the paper cassette.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to turn the printer ON once when loading paper in the paper cassette for the first time after installing the paper feeder.
- Be sure not to open the covers or paper cassette during printing. The printer may stop, disabling printing.

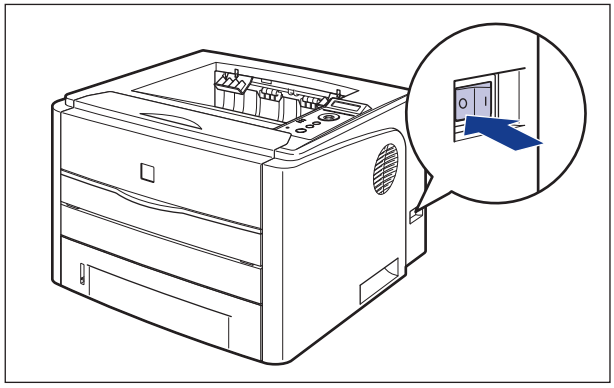
### ■ When the → (Job) indicator is off




### ■ When a message that informs you of a paper-out condition or requests paper replacement is displayed

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

■ **When the printer is OFF**



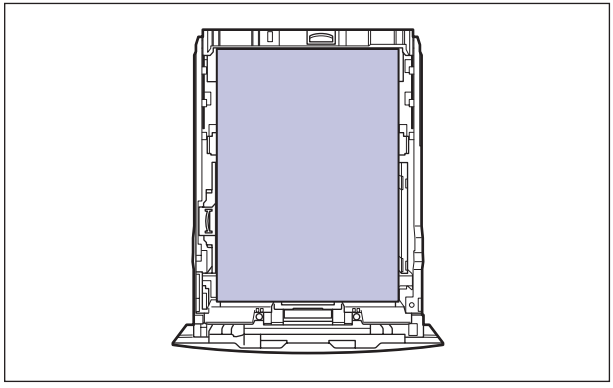
## Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette

Load paper in the paper cassette. The paper loading methods are different between standard size paper and custom size paper.

- Standard Size Paper (See "When Loading Standard Size Paper," on p. 4-21)
- Custom Size Paper (See "When Loading Custom Size Paper," on p. 4-27)

### *When Loading Standard Size Paper*

Load standard size paper in the paper cassette using the following procedure. Be sure to load standard size paper in portrait orientation when loading it in the paper cassette.



IMPORTANT

- For more details on the usable paper, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- For details on handling the paper cassette, see "Precautions for Handling the Manual Feed Slot or Paper Cassette," on p. 4-13.





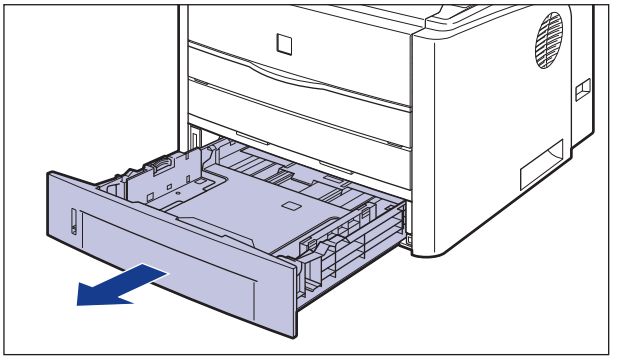
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Do not load paper other than plain paper (60 to 90 g/$m^2$) and heavy paper (91 to 120 g/$m^2$). This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.

NOTE

Load paper in Cassette 2 (Only when the optional paper feeder is installed) in the same manner as you load paper in Cassette 1.

## 1 Pull out the paper cassette.



**CAUTION**

**Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.**



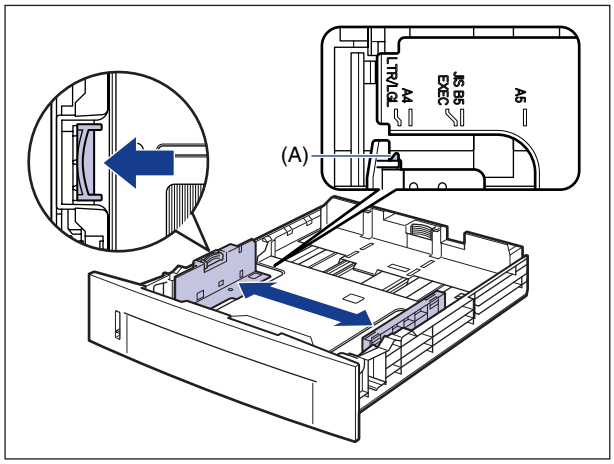


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2 When changing the size of the paper to be loaded, change the positions of the paper guides.

- **While holding the lock release lever of the side paper guides, slide the guides to the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.**

  The side paper guides move together. Align the position of (A) with the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.




NOTE

If you are using B5 size paper (182 mm x 257 mm), set the paper guide to "JIS B5".

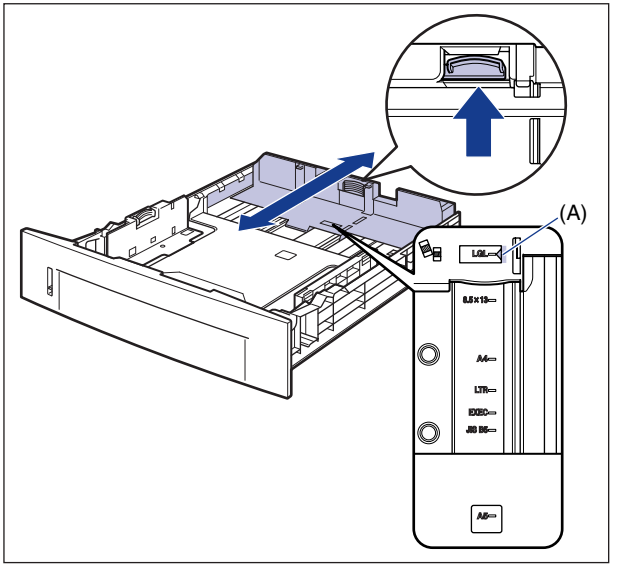




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **While holding the lock release lever of the rear paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the paper to be loaded.**

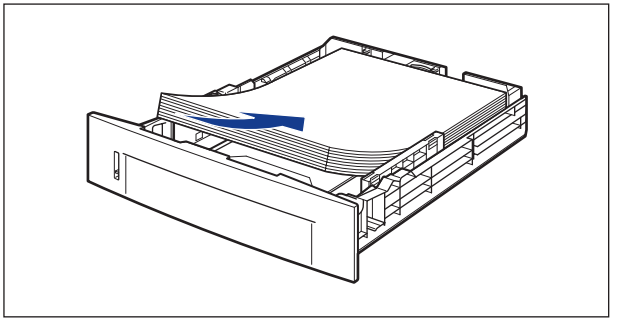
  Align the position of (A) with the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.




IMPORTANT

Do not use the "8.5 x 13" position.

## 3 Load the paper stack so that the rear edge is aligned with the paper guide.



**CAUTION**

**When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**



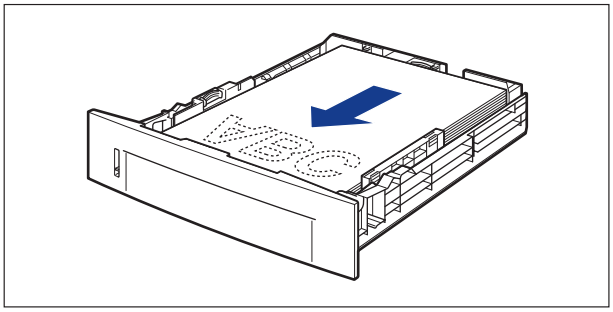
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

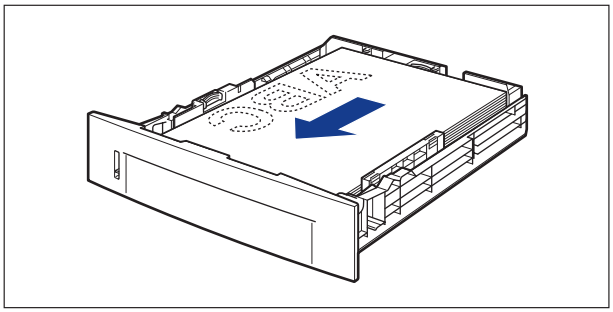
IMPORTANT

- Be sure to check if the paper guide is at the position of the size of the loaded paper. If the paper guide is set at a wrong position, this may result in misfeeds.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down, as shown in the following figures.
( ⬅ : Feeding direction)





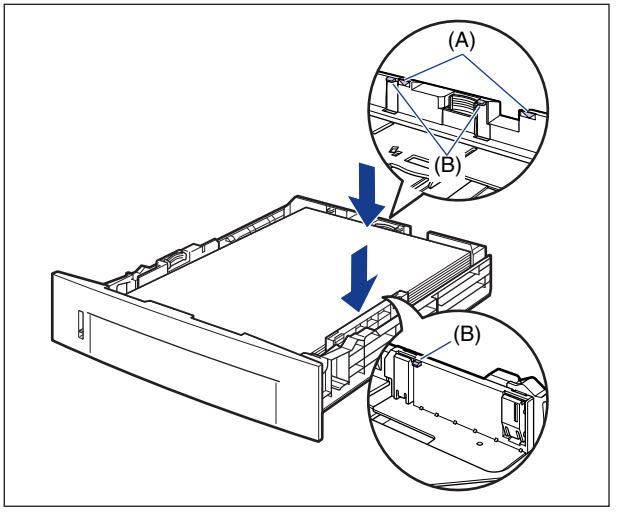




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 4 Hold down the paper as shown in the figures, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks (A), and then set it under the hooks (B) on the paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks of the paper guides and the paper stack. If there is no sufficient space, slightly reduce the amount of paper.




**IMPORTANT**

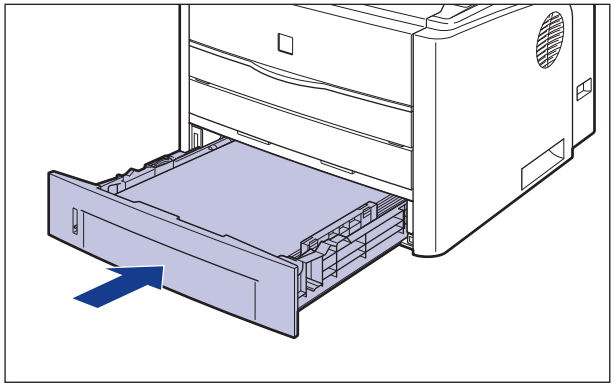
The following shows the paper capacity of the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

- Plain paper Approx. 250 sheets (Ex. 80 g/m$^2$)
- Heavy paper Approx. 200 sheets (Ex. 91 g/m$^2$)


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 5 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette.
See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette" (p. 4-34) to register the paper size.

## *When Loading Custom Size Paper*

Load custom size paper in the paper cassette using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

- You can load paper of the following custom sizes.
  - When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm
  - When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 210.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 215.9 mm
- For more details on the usable paper, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- For details on handling the paper cassette, see "Precautions for Handling the Manual Feed Slot or Paper Cassette," on p. 4-13.
- Do not load paper other than plain paper (60 to 90 g/$m^2$) and heavy paper (91 to 120 g/$m^2$). This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.
- When custom size paper is loaded, specify the settings for CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE as follows.
  - When the paper is loaded in landscape orientation: CUSTOM SIZE
  - When the paper is loaded in portrait orientation: CUSTOM SIZER





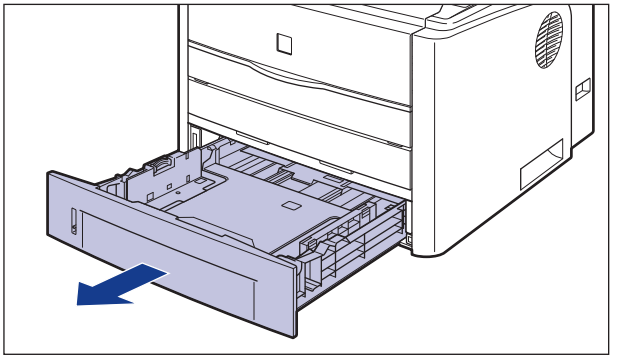
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When you change the orientation of the loaded custom size paper frequently, it is convenient if you set CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE each time the paper orientation is changed. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.
  - Make sure that the size of the loaded paper matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the cassette do not match. For more details, see "SPECIAL MODE J," on p. 6-31.
  - When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

NOTE

Load custom size paper in Cassette 2 (Only when the optional paper feeder is installed) in the same manner as you load custom size paper in Cassette 1.

## 1 Pull out the paper cassette.



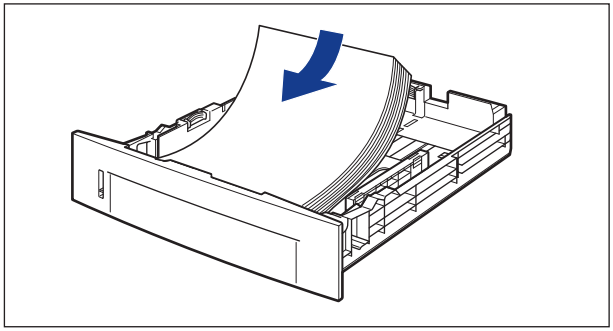
**CAUTION**

**Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.**



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2 Load the paper so that the edge of the paper is aligned with the front side of the paper cassette.



**CAUTION**

**When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**

IMPORTANT

- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.
- When you are printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, load the paper in landscape orientation when the setting for CASSETTE1 SIZE or CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES on printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

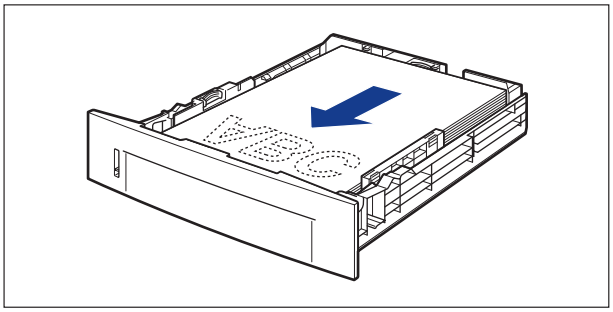


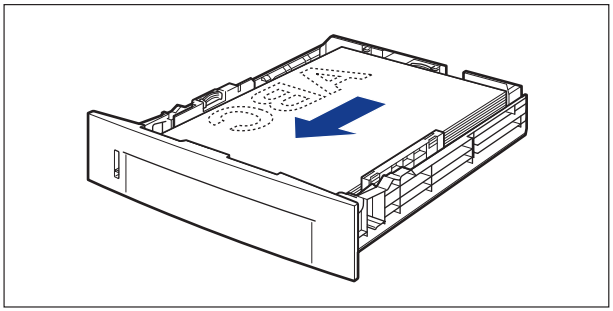


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

- To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo when loading paper in portrait orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figures.
  ( ⬅ : Feeding direction)



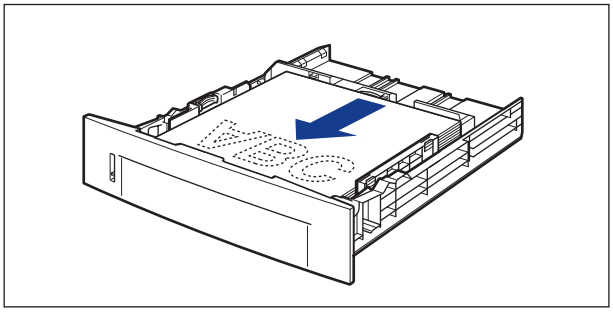


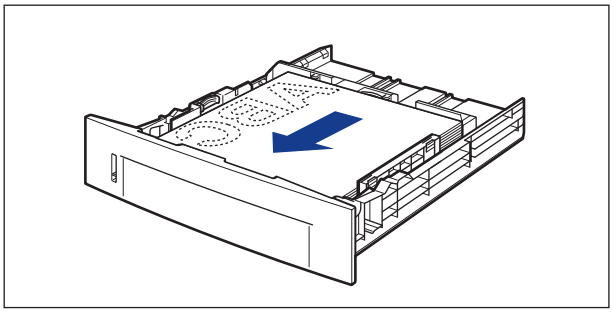




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

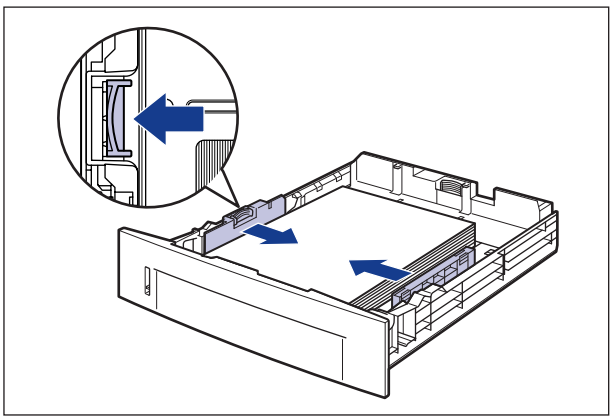
• To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo when loading paper in landscape orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figures.
(⬅: Feeding direction)





### 3 While holding the lock release lever of the side paper guides, slide the guides to the mark for the size of the loaded paper.

The side paper guides move together.



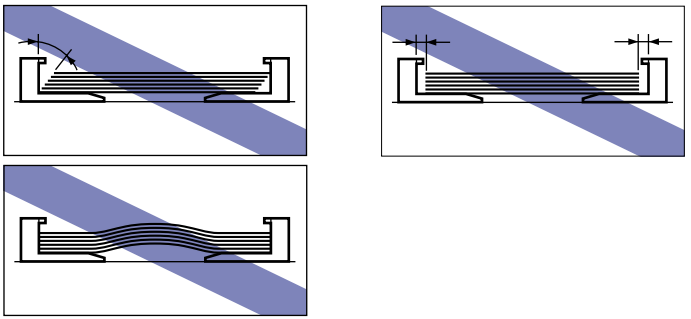




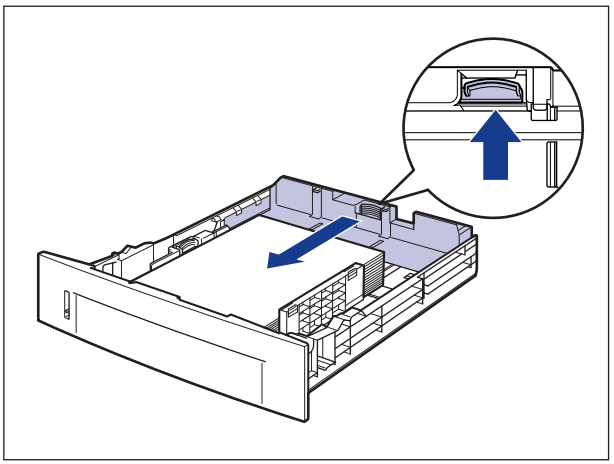
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



**4 While holding the lock release lever of the rear paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the loaded paper.**

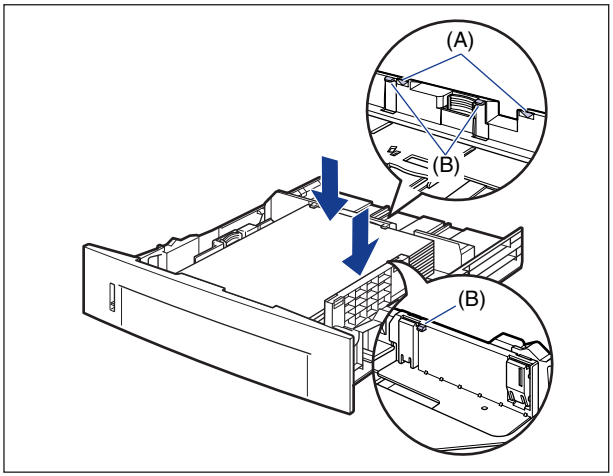




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 5 Hold down the paper as shown in the figures, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks (A), and then set it under the hooks (B) on the paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks of the paper guides and the paper stack. If there is no sufficient space, slightly reduce the amount of paper.




IMPORTANT

The following shows the paper capacity of the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

- Plain paper Approx. 250 sheets (Ex. 80 g/m$^2$)
- Heavy paper Approx. 200 sheets (Ex. 91 g/m$^2$)

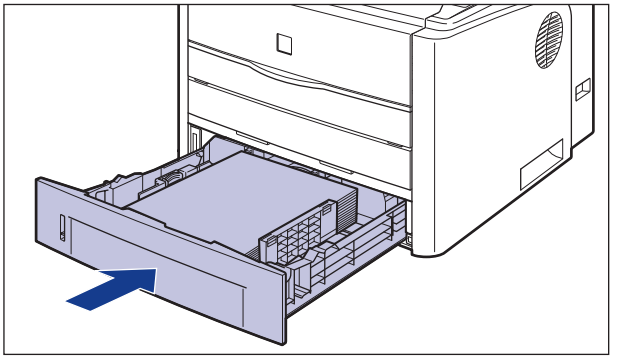




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### 6 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette.
See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette" (p. 4-34) to register the paper size.

## Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, when you loaded paper in the paper cassette, you need to specify the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette using the control panel. When using standard size paper, specify its size. When loading custom size paper, specify CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZER. The paper size setting for the paper cassette is set to "A4" by default.

Specify the paper size setting for the paper cassette using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

- Match the paper size specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting values for CASSETTE1 SIZE and CASSETTE2 SIZE are changed to those in the printer driver by pressing the ●— (Online) key, allowing you to continue printing.
- When custom size paper is loaded, specify the settings for CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE as follows.
  - When the paper is loaded in landscape orientation: CUSTOM SIZE


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When the paper is loaded in portrait orientation: CUSTOM SIZER

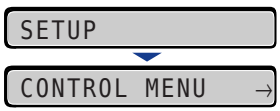
• When you change the paper loaded in the paper cassette frequently, it is convenient if you set CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the settings for CASSETTE1 SIZE and/or CASSETTE2 SIZE each time the different size paper is loaded. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.

- Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette do not match. For more details, see "SPECIAL MODE J," on p. 6-31.
- When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

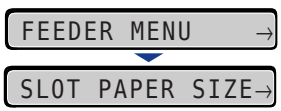
NOTE

The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation.
Legal: LG, Letter: LT, Executive: EX, Custom Size: 80 to 99, Custom SizeR: 80R to 99R, Free/Mixed Sizes: FR

**1 Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.**

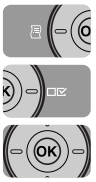


**2 Select FEEDER MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**3 Select CASSETTE1 SIZE or CASSETTE2 SIZE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals



## 4 Select the paper size using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

"=" is displayed on the left of the paper size, and the paper size for the paper cassette is specified.

When printing from the printer driver on Windows or Macintosh, configure the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)
When printing from DOS or UNIX, specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-15) and STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-17) using the control panel.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Printing from the Manual Feed Slot

The manual feed slot can be loaded with only one sheet of paper at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Index Card, Statement, 16K, and paper of the following custom paper sizes.

• Custom Size Paper
When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm
When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 127.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 215.9 mm

When printing only a sheet of paper that is different in size or type from the one loaded in the paper cassette, load the paper in the manual feed slot. Paper that cannot be loaded in the paper cassette such as transparency and envelope can be loaded in the manual feed slot.

When printing from the manual feed slot, you need to specify the following settings.

IMPORTANT

Match the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE in the SETUP menu of the printer and that in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting value for SLOT PAPER SIZE is changed to that in the printer driver by pressing the •—• (Online) key, allowing you to continue printing.

NOTE

If you are printing from an operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, previously specify the paper source to MANU.FEED SLOT. (See p. 4-12)

## ■ Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot (See p. 4-38)

## ■ Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Manual Feed Slot (See p. 4-46)

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

• SLOT PAPER SIZE = the size of the loaded paper

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, specify the following settings in addition to SLOT PAPER SIZE.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

• STD PAPER SIZE = the size of the loaded paper (See p. 6-15)
• STD PAPER TYPE = the type of the loaded paper (See p. 6-17)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ Specifying the Paper Settings in the Printer Driver (See Driver Guide)

When printing from the printer driver, specify the following settings. For more details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

[Page Setup] Sheet
[Output Size] = the size of the loaded paper

[Paper Source] Sheet
[Paper Source] = [Manual Feed Slot]

[Paper Type] = [Plain Paper L]: Plain Paper (60 - 74 g/m$^2$)
[Plain Paper]: Plain Paper (75 - 90 g/m$^2$)
[Heavy Paper 1]: Heavy Paper (91 - 120 g/m$^2$)
[Heavy Paper 2]: Heavy Paper (121 - 163 g/m$^2$)
[Heavy Paper H]: Specify when you want to improve the toner fixation on printing with [Paper Type] set to [Heavy Paper 2].
[Transparency]: Transparencies
[Label]: Labels
[Envelope]: Envelopes



## Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

Load paper in the manual feed slot. The paper loading procedure varies depending on the paper type. Refer to the respective procedures for each paper type.

- Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label, Index Card (See "When Loading Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label, or Index Card," on p. 4-38)
- Envelope (See "When Loading Envelope," on p. 4-43)

IMPORTANT

- For more details on the usable paper, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- For details on how to handle the manual feed slot, see "Precautions for Handling the Manual Feed Slot or Paper Cassette," on p. 4-13.

### *When Loading Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label, or Index Card*

Perform the following procedure to load plain paper, heavy paper, transparency, label, or Index Card in the manual feed slot.

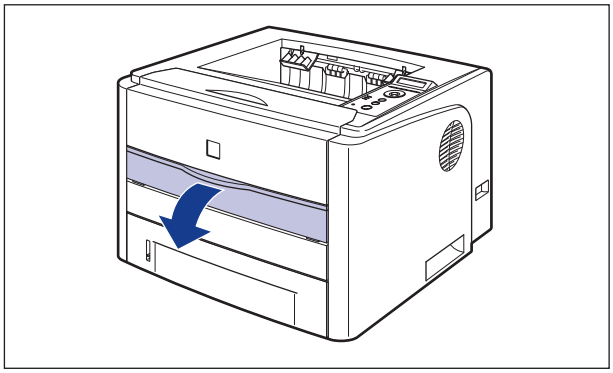
IMPORTANT

- The manual feed slot can be loaded with only one sheet of paper.


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

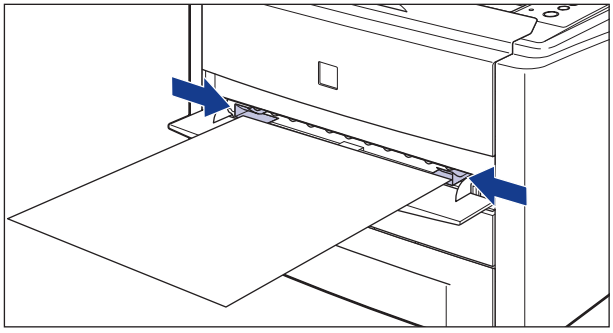
- Make sure that the printer is not operating and the ◯ (Ready) indicator is on when loading paper in the manual feed slot. However, when printing multiple copies or multiple pages from the manual feed slot, make sure that the printer is not operating and the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on before loading the second and subsequent paper. If paper is loaded in the manual feed slot while the printer is operating such as when the printer is printing or immediately after outputting paper, the loaded paper may be output without being printed, or this may result in paper jams.

## 1 Open the manual feed slot cover.



## 2 Adjust the paper guides to the width of the loaded paper as shown in the figure.

The paper guides move together.



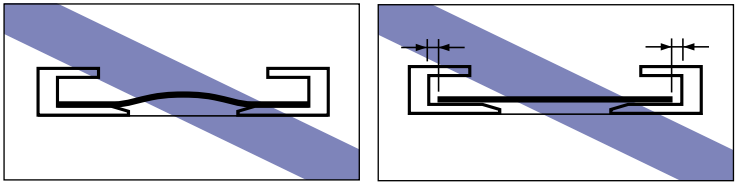




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



- When you are printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, load the paper in landscape orientation when the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES on printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

NOTE

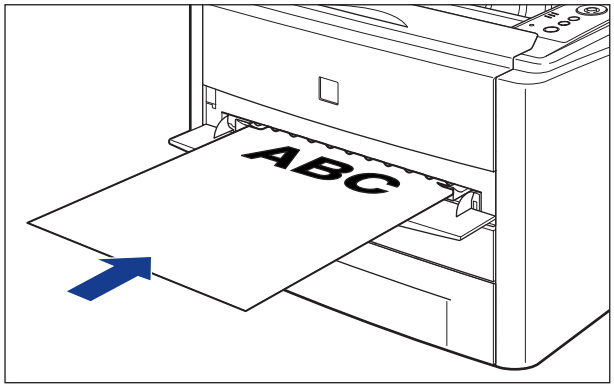
To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

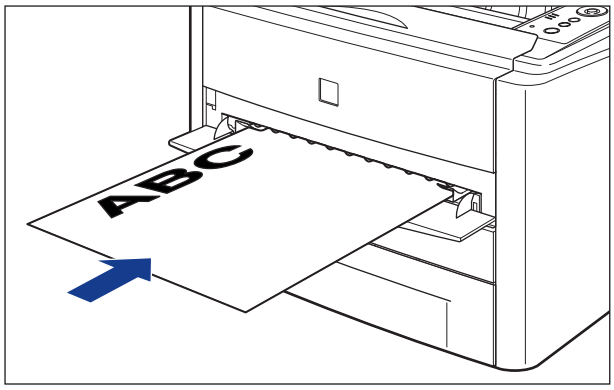




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When loading paper at a size of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Index Card, Statement, or 16K or custom size paper in portrait orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figures.
(⬅: Feeding direction)



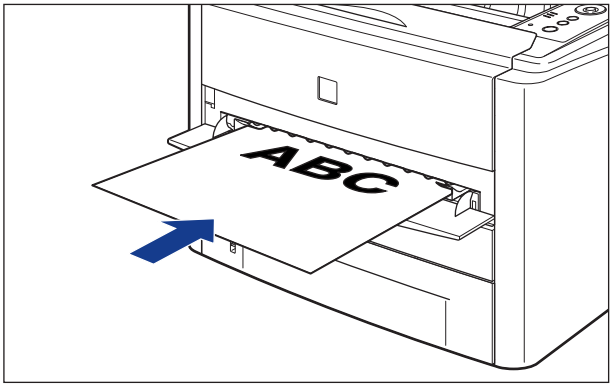



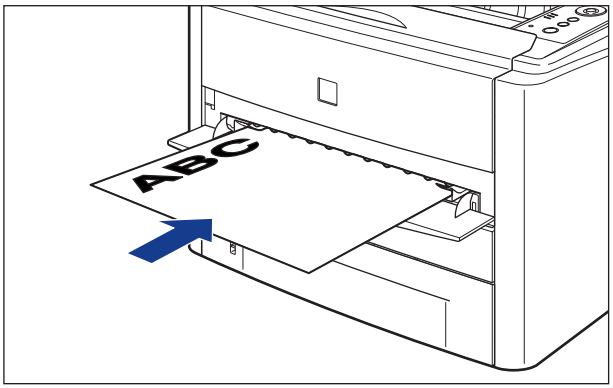




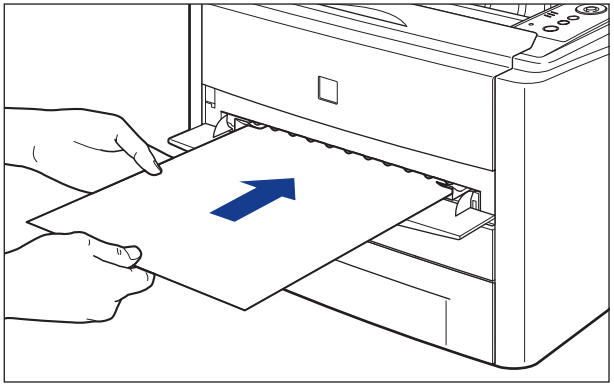

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When loading custom size paper in landscape orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figures.
(←: Feeding direction)




**3 Gently insert the paper until it touches the back of the printer while supporting the paper with hands as shown in the figure.**



When the paper is loaded, it is sent into the slot a little.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**CAUTION**

**When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**

IMPORTANT

- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.

Next, specify the paper size for the manual feed slot (See p. 4-46).

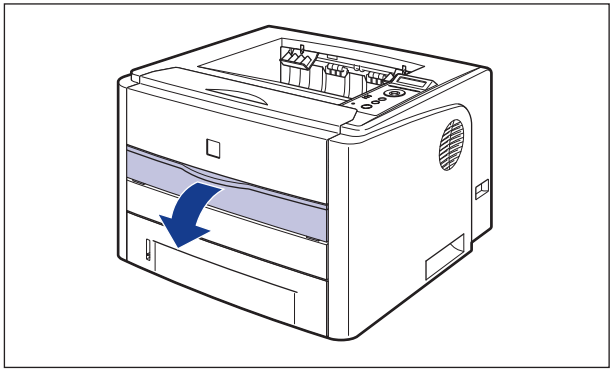
## When Loading Envelope

You can load envelope at sizes of DL, COM10, C5, Monarch, and B5 in the manual feed slot. Use the following procedure when loading envelope in the manual feed slot.

IMPORTANT

- The manual feed slot can be loaded with only one envelope.
- Make sure that the printer is not operating and the ↻ (Ready) indicator is on when loading an envelope in the manual feed slot. When printing multiple copies or multiple pages from the manual feed slot, make sure that the printer is not operating and the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on before loading the second and subsequent envelope. If an envelope is loaded in the manual feed slot while the printer is operating such as when the printer is printing or immediately after outputting paper, the loaded envelope may be output without being printed, or this may result in paper jams.

### 1 Open the manual feed slot cover.



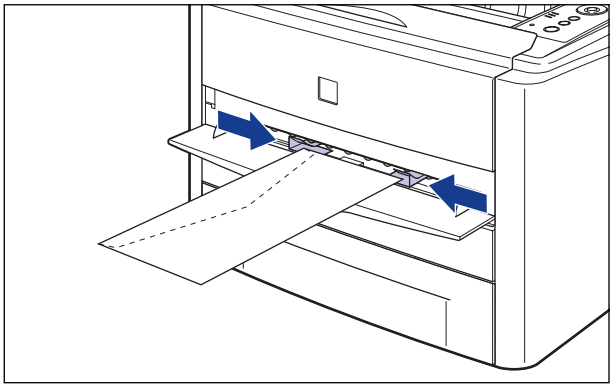




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

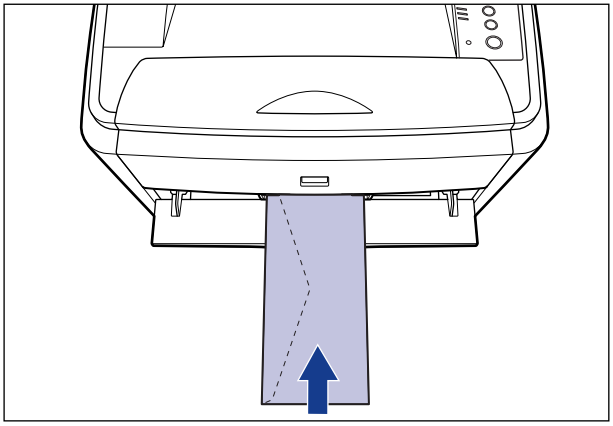
## 2 Adjust the paper guides to the width of the loaded envelope as shown in the figure.

The paper guides move together.



IMPORTANT

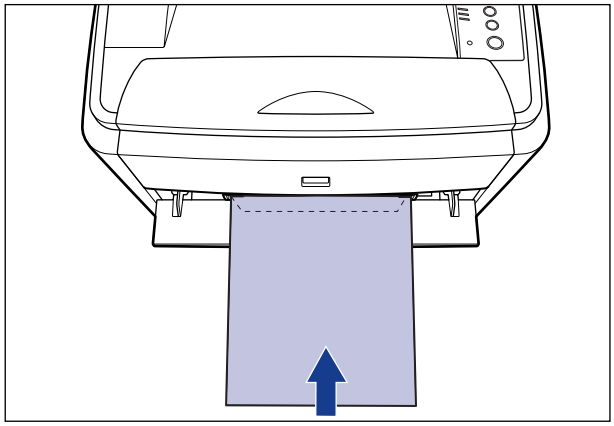
- You cannot print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- When loading an envelope at a size of DL, COM10, C5, or Monarch, load it so that the flap is toward the left of the printer when viewed from the front.



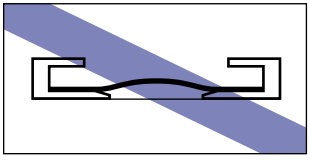


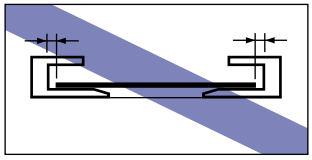
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• When loading an envelope of the Envelope B5 size, close the flap and load it so that the envelope is printed from the top (the edge with the flap).

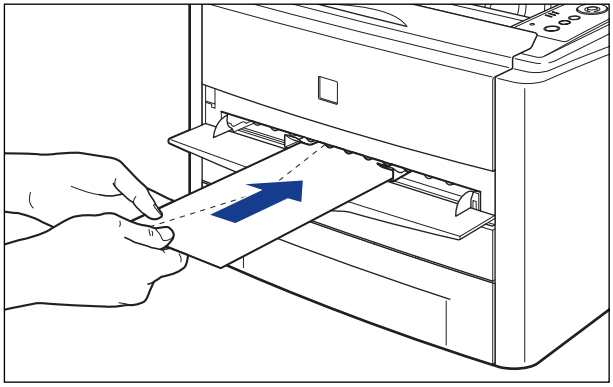


• Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the envelope. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.





### 3 Gently insert the envelope until it touches the back of the printer while supporting the envelope with hands as shown in the figure.



When the envelope is loaded, it is sent into the slot a little.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**CAUTION**

**When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**

IMPORTANT

Load the envelope so that it is straight.

Next, specify the paper size for the manual feed slot (See p. 4-46).

## Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

When you loaded paper in the manual feed slot, specify the paper size for the manual feed slot using the control panel. When using paper or envelopes of standard size, specify its size. When loading custom size paper, specify CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZER. The paper size setting for the manual feed slot is set to "A4" by default.

Specify the paper size setting for the manual feed slot using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

- Match the paper size specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting value for SLOT PAPER SIZE is changed to that in the printer driver by pressing the ●— (Online) key, allowing you to continue printing.
- When custom size paper is loaded, specify the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE as follows.
  - When the paper is loaded in landscape orientation: CUSTOM SIZE
  - When the paper is loaded in portrait orientation: CUSTOM SIZER
- When you change the paper loaded in the manual feed slot frequently, it is convenient if SLOT PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES. If SLOT PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE each time you load the different size paper. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.
  - Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot do not match. For more details, see "SPECIAL MODE J," on p. 6-31.
  - When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



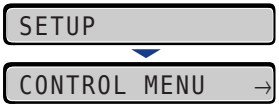


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

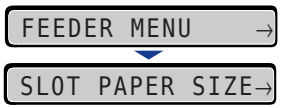
NOTE

The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation.
Legal: LG, Letter: LT, Executive: EX, Statement: ST, Index Card: IC, Envelope DL: DL, Envelope COM10: CO, Envelope C5: EC5, Envelope Monarch: MO, Envelope B5: EB5, Custom Size: 80 to 99, Custom SizeR: 80R to 99R, Free/Mixed Sizes: FR

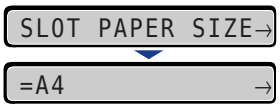
**1** **Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.**



**2** **Select FEEDER MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**3** **Select SLOT PAPER SIZE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**4** **Select the paper size using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**

"=" is displayed on the left of the paper size, and the paper size for the manual feed slot is specified.

When printing from the printer driver on Windows or Macintosh, configure the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)
When printing from DOS or UNIX, specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-15) and STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-17) using the control panel.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 2-sided Printing

You can perform 2-sided printing with the standard equipment of this printer. Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m$^2$) and heavy paper (91 to 120 g/m$^2$) at sizes of A4, Legal, and Letter can be used for automatic 2-sided printing.

IMPORTANT

- You cannot perform automatic 2-sided printing on heavy paper (121 to 163 g/m$^2$), transparencies, labels, and envelopes.
- When 2-sided printing is specified, and a job with odd number of pages is printed, the printing surface of the last page are as follows according to the setting for ALT.METHOD (See p. 6-22) or the paper source.
  - When printing from the paper cassette
    If ALT.METHOD is set to ON, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
    If ALT.METHOD is set to OFF, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
  - When printing from the manual feed slot
    If ALT.METHOD is set to ON, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
    If ALT.METHOD is set to OFF, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
- Do not touch the paper during automatic 2-sided printing until it is completely output to the face-down output tray. In automatic 2-sided printing, the paper is partially output once after printed on its surface and is fed again to be printed on its reverse side.
- Be sure to close the output selection cover before performing automatic 2-sided printing.
- When performing automatic 2-sided printing, be sure to confirm the paper size switch lever is set to the appropriate position. When the paper size switch lever is not set to the appropriate position, this may result in paper jams. For details on the procedure for setting the paper size switch lever, see "Setting the Paper Size Switch Lever," on p. 4-49.

## Switching Between Automatic 2-sided Printing and 1-sided Printing

Perform automatic 2-sided printing using the following procedure.

### ■ When printing from Windows

When performing automatic 2-sided printing, set [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet in the printer driver to [2-sided Printing]. For more details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

### ■ When printing from Macintosh

When performing automatic 2-sided printing, specify the settings for 2-sided printing in the printer driver. For more details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.





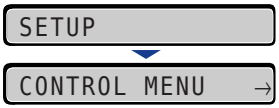
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ When printing from DOS or UNIX

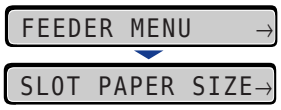
When you are printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which you cannot use the printer driver, specify the settings using the control panel.

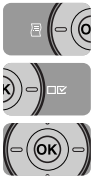
Switch between automatic 2-sided printing and 1-sided printing with the printer's control panel using the following procedure.

**1** **Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.**

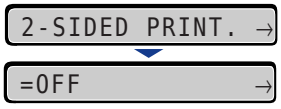


**2** **Select FEEDER MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**3** **Select 2-SIDED PRINT. using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**4** **Select ON using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**

"=" is displayed on the left of ON, and 2-sided printing is specified.

## Setting the Paper Size Switch Lever

When performing automatic 2-sided printing, be sure to confirm the paper size switch lever is set to the appropriate position. When the paper size switch lever is not set to the appropriate position, this may result in paper jams.

Set the paper size switch lever using the following procedure.

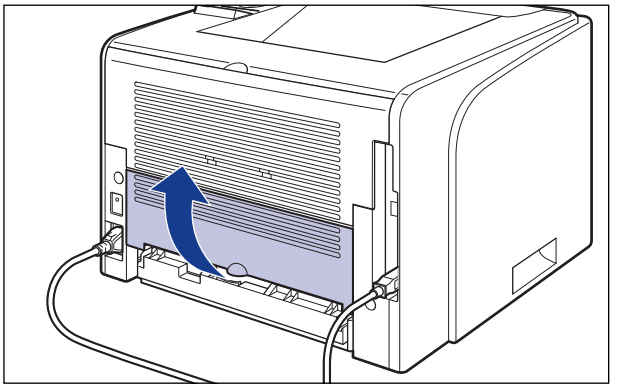




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 1 Open the duplex unit cover.

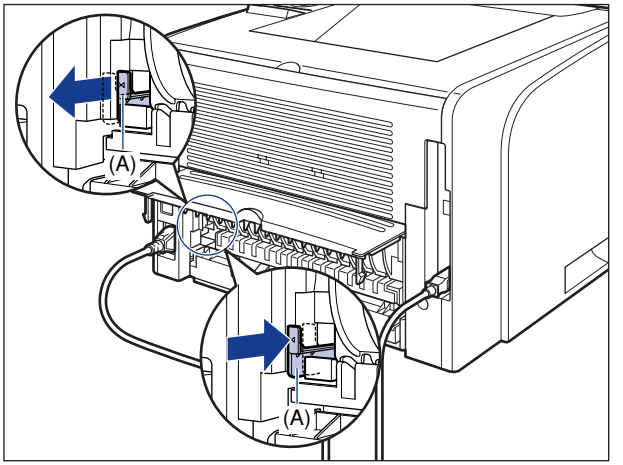
Holding the opening at the center of the duplex unit cover, open it gently.



## 2 Set the blue paper size switch lever (A) to the appropriate position according to the paper size for 2-sided printing.

For A4 size, draw the paper size switch lever toward you.

For Letter or Legal size, push the paper size switch lever into the printer.

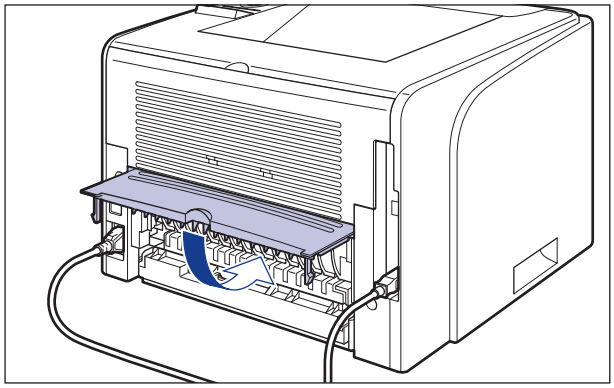




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### 3 Close the duplex unit cover.

Holding the opening at the center of the duplex unit cover, close it gently.



## Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing

In automatic 2-sided printing, the orientation of the paper you load is opposite to that when performing 1-sided printing because the reverse side of paper is printed first. When printing paper such as that with a letterhead in which faces and printing orientation specified, load the paper using the following procedure:

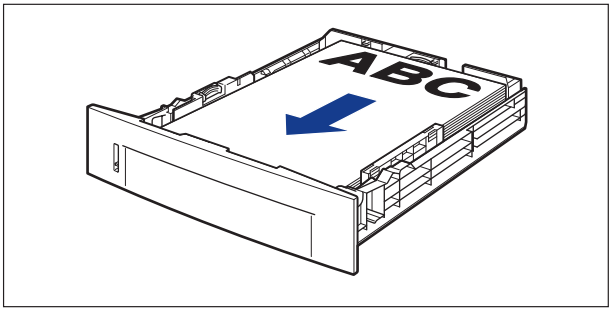


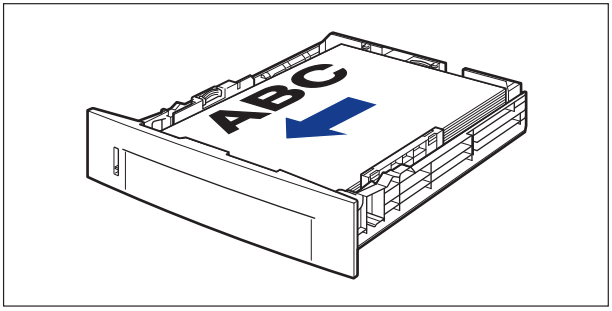


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## When Feeding Paper from the Paper Cassette

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figures.
( ⬅: Feeding direction)



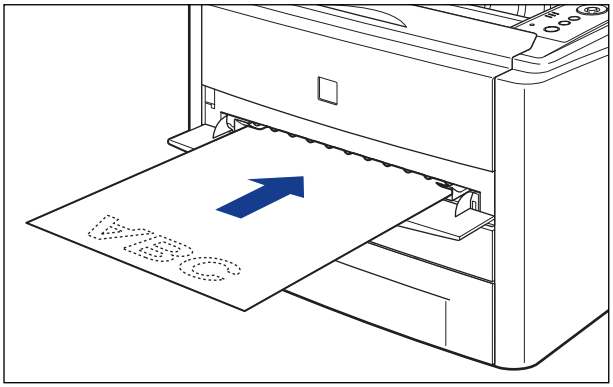


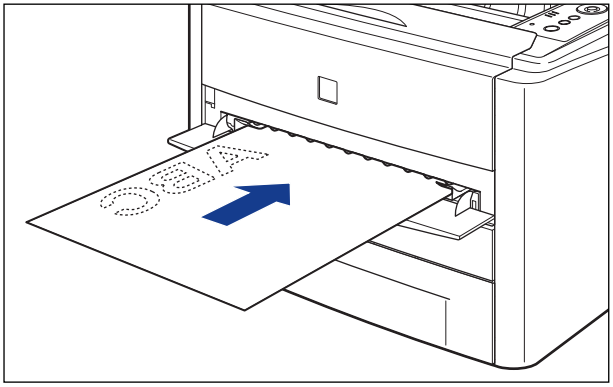



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## When Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figures.
(⬅: Feeding direction)







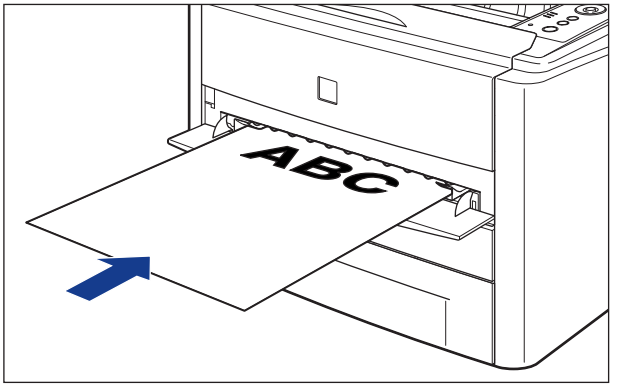


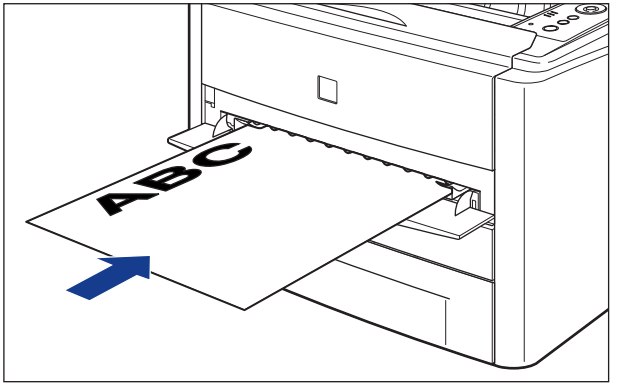
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Loading Paper for Manual 2-sided Printing

Since this printer can print on the other side of previously printed paper, you can perform 2-sided printing on paper to which automatic 2-sided printing cannot be applied. When printing on the other side of previously printed paper from the manual feed slot, load the paper as shown in the following figures.

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figures.
( ⬅ : Feeding direction)








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1 Before Using the Printer

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the printer's features and the names of its parts. It also explains how to set up the printer, how to load paper and toner cartridges, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Checking the Package Contents . . . . . 1-8
Selecting a Location for the Installation Site . . . . . 1-9
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Menu Functions

This section describes the menu functions and their categories.

## Menu Functions

Before printing, specify the total print pages, paper size, etc. Generally, these settings are specified in an application or printer driver.

This printer, however, is supplied with many items as well as the settings for the total print pages and paper size, enabling printing for a wide array of uses. Some settings for this printer cannot be specified by application or printer driver. You can specify these settings using the "menu functions".

You can specify the settings using the menu functions easily because in the menu functions a variety of settings are classified by purpose.

There are the following two kinds of procedures for specifying the menu functions.

### ■ Settings Using the Printer's Control Panel

Specify the settings by pressing the keys while checking the display on the printer.

### ■ Settings Using the Remote UI

Some settings specified by the control panel can be specified by a web browser from your computer.

NOTE

- For this section, this manual describes only the procedures for specifying the menu functions using the control panel. For details on specifying the settings using the Remote UI, see "Remote UI Guide".
- The settings for the menu functions are registered to the memory (NVRAM) in which data is not deleted normally even if the printer is turned OFF. Therefore, even after cycling the power of the printer, it starts with its settings unchanged from when the printer was turned OFF last time.

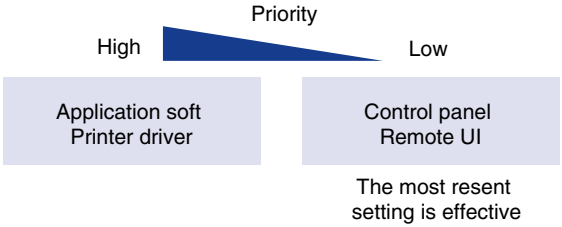




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Setting Priority

When the setting values for the same item are different between an application or the printer driver and the menu functions, the setting specified in the application or printer driver is effective. When specifying an item only in the menu functions using the control panel or the Remote UI, the most recently specified setting is effective.




The printer driver and Remote UI are supplied with this printer. For details on using the printer driver or Remote UI, see "Driver Guide", Help of the printer driver, and "Remote UI Guide".

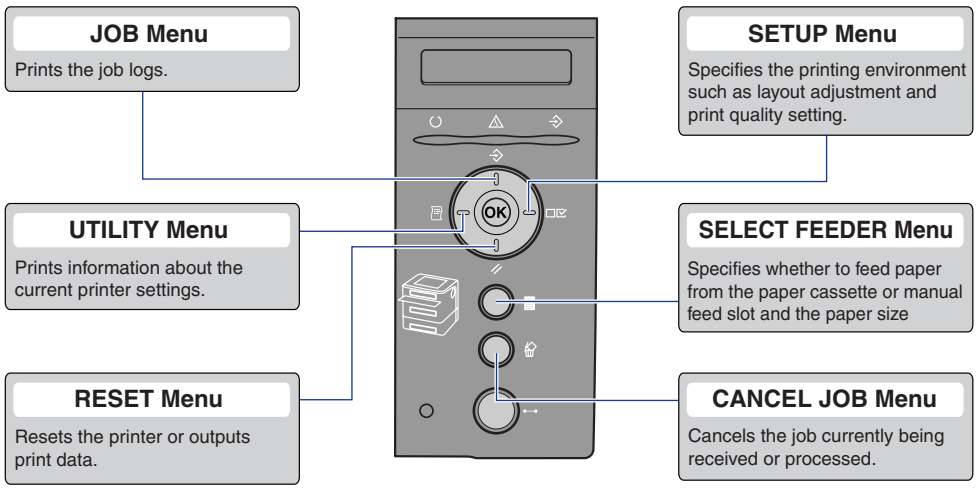
Depending on the items, they become effective after cycling the power of the printer or performing a hard reset.

# Menu Categories

There are the following six categories of the menu.

For the functions and operation procedures, see "Menu Functions and Menu Operation," on p. 5-9.

For details on each menu, see "Chapter 6 Printing Environment Settings".


JOB Menu
Prints the job logs.
SETUP Menu
Specifies the printing environment such as layout adjustment and print quality setting.
UTILITY Menu
Prints information about the current printer settings.
SELECT FEEDER Menu
Specifies whether to feed paper from the paper cassette or manual feed slot and the paper size
RESET Menu
Resets the printer or outputs print data.
CANCEL JOB Menu
Cancels the job currently being received or processed.
OK





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation

You can enter each menu when the printer is in the following status.

O: The status that you can enter the menu

X: The status that you cannot enter the menu

| | When the printer is ready to print *1 | | When an error is occurring *2 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | When the printer is online | When the printer is offline | |
| SETUP Menu | ○*3 | ○ | ○ |
| SELECT FEEDER Menu | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| RESET Menu | ○ | ○ | ○*4 |
| Job Menu | ○ | x | x |
| UTILITY Menu | ○ | x | x |

*1 The printer is ready to print when the ○ (Ready) indicator is on.

*2 An error is occurring in the printer when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on.

*3 You cannot specify the settings in the USER MAIN. options when the printer is in the online status.

*4 You cannot specify the settings for FORM FEED.



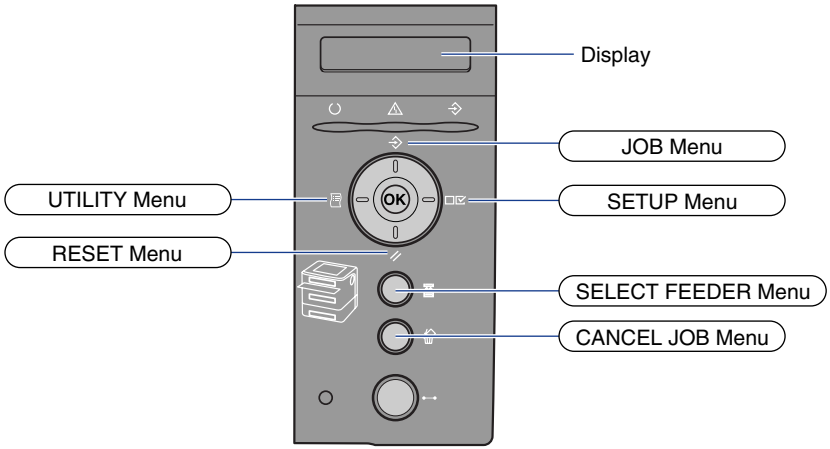


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# How to Use the Operation Keys

Use the following keys for the menu operation.

Among the keys, the ☐☑ (Settings) key, (Utility) key, (Job) key, (Reset) key, (Cancel Job) key, and (Feeder Selection) key have the function to display a menu.




■ **The functions of each key are as follows.**

| Key | Functions | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (Online) | Switches between online and offline. The printer is online when the indicator under the key is on and is offline when the indicator is off. Indicated as the (Online) key in the manuals. | | |
| (Cancel Job) | **When the printer is online** | **Immediately after placing the printer online** | **While the menu is displayed** |
| | If pressed when the (Job) indicator is on or blinking (When data is being processed or received), cancels the job currently being processed. Indicated as the (Cancel Job) key in the manuals. | | Does not function. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| Key | Functions | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | When the printer is online | Immediately after placing the printer online | While the menu is displayed |
| (Feeder Selection) | Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu. Indicated as the (Feeder Selection) key in the manuals. | | Does not function. |
| (Utility) | Displays the UTILITY menu. Indicated as the (Utility) key in the manuals. | Does not function. | Displays the next left item in the same hierarchy. When the setting value is numeric, reduces the value. If you keep holding down the key, the speed of the value decreasing is increased depending on the item. Indicated as [◄] in the manuals. |
| (Job) | Displays the JOB menu. Indicated as the (Job) key in the manuals. | Does not function. | Displays the item of the next upper hierarchy. Indicated as [▲] in the manuals. |
| (Reset) | Displays the RESET menu. Indicated as the (Reset) key in the manuals. | | Executes the selected item. Otherwise, goes down the hierarchy. Indicated as [▼] in the manuals. Has the same function as [OK]. |
| (Settings) | Displays the SETUP menu. Indicated as the ☐☑ (Settings) key in the manuals. However, the USER MAIN. options cannot be specified when the printer is online. | | Displays the next right item in the same hierarchy. When the setting value is numeric, increases the value. If you keep holding down the key, the speed of the value increasing is increased depending on the item. Indicated as [►] in the manuals. |
| (OK) | Does not function. | | Executes the selected item. Otherwise, goes down the hierarchy. Indicated as [OK] in the manuals. Has the same function as [▼]. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

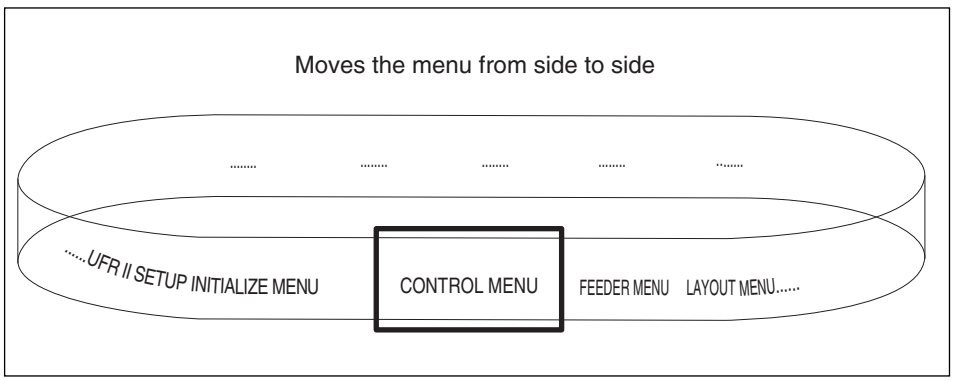
# How to View the Display

This section describes the contents of the letters that appear in the display when specifying the menu functions.

## Menu Structure

The menu structure looks like a chain (loop structure), and one of the menus on this chain is displayed in the display. Therefore, continuously pressing [◄] or [►] displays the first menu again.

The menus consist of individual loop structures in each hierarchy.

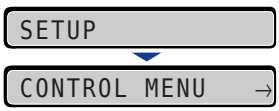



## How to View the Display

Up to 16 characters appear in a line in the display.

After you display a menu by pressing a key, the item of the first hierarchy in the menu appears automatically.

If there is any selectable item in the same hierarchy, "→" appears on the right in the display.

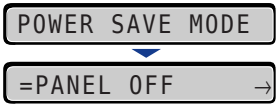







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If no action is taken after the lowest hierarchy in the menu is displayed, the item of the next upper hierarchy and that of the currently selected hierarchy are displayed alternately.




"=" is displayed on the left in the display for the currently selected setting value.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Menu Functions and Menu Operation

This section describes the overview of the menus and operating procedures for them.

## SETUP Menu

This section describes the function of the SETUP menu and the operating procedure for it.

### *SETUP Menu Functions*

The SETUP menu allows you to configure a variety of printing environment such as printing position, type of character set, and the selection of the interface for connecting the printer to the computer.

Normally, you can configure a printing environment using an application or the printer driver in a computer connected to the printer. However, some settings such as interface configuration can be specified only in the SETUP menu of the printer. Also, you can print using an application in which you cannot specify the print settings or MS-DOS command directly. When you are printing using them, specify the printing environment using the SETUP menu in the printer.

NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "SETUP Menu Settings," on p. 6-10.

### *Operating Procedure for the SETUP Menu*

The SETUP menu consists of three hierarchies: "Option", "Item", and "Setting Value". Select the target options in each hierarchy.

As an example of the setting procedure, this section describes the procedure for setting SLOT PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options to B5. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Place the printer offline.** | Press the ●—● (Online) key.<br>When the printer is online, the SETUP menu can be displayed, however, the USER MAIN. options cannot be specified. |



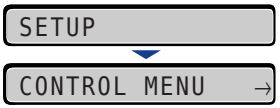


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**2** **Display the SETUP menu.**

Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.

The SETUP menu is displayed.




**3** **Select the option.**

When the FEEDER MENU options are selected

Press [◄] or [►].

The target option is displayed.

**4** **Display the item.**

Press [OK].

The selected item is displayed.

**5** **Select the item.**

When SLOT PAPER SIZE is selected

Press [◄] or [►].

The target item is displayed.

**6** **Display the setting value.**

Press [OK].

The selected setting value is displayed.

**7** **Select the setting value.**

When B5 is selected

Press [◄] or [►].

The target setting value is displayed.

**8** **Determine the selected setting value.**

Press [OK].

**9** **Switch back to online state.**

Press the ●— (Online) key.

NOTE

- The printer can switch back to online when it is ready to print. The printer is ready to print when the ◯ (Ready) indicator is on.
- If you press [▲] during the setting, the display goes back up the hierarchy.
- If you press the ●— (Online) key during the setting, the setting is canceled.
- In some options, the items are divided into two different hierarchies.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# UTILITY Menu

This section describes the function of the UTILITY menu and the operating procedure for it.

## UTILITY Menu Functions

The UTILITY menu allows you to print the settings for the SETUP menu or perform cleaning.

NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "UTILITY Menu Settings," on p. 6-38.

## Operating Procedure for the UTILITY Menu

The UTILITY menu consists of two hierarchies: "Common Utilities" and "Exclusive Utilities". Select the target options in each hierarchy. Exclusive Utilities are displayed only when PCL UTILITY is displayed in the hierarchy of Common Utilities.

This section describes the procedure for printing FONTS LIST in PCL UTILITY as an example. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Make sure that the printer is online.** | If the printer is not online, press the (Online) key. |
| **2** **Display the UTILITY menu.**<br>UTILITY MENU<br>▼<br>CONFIG.PAGE → | Press the (Utility) key.<br>The UTILITY menu is displayed. |
| **3** **Select the Common Utility.**<br>When PCL UTILITY is selected<br>PCL UTILITY → | Press [◄] or [►].<br>The target Common Utility is displayed. |
| **4** **Display the Exclusive Utility**<br>FONTS LIST → | Press [OK].<br>The Exclusive Utility is displayed. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**5** **Select the Exclusive Utility.**

When FONTS LIST is selected

Press [◄] or [►].

The target Exclusive Utility is displayed.

**6** **Confirm the selected option.**

Press [OK].

A fonts list is printed.

NOTE

- If you did not select the Exclusive Utility (PCL UTILITY), Step 4 to 5 are omitted.
- If you press [▲] during the setting, the display goes back up the hierarchy.
- If you press the ⊷ (Online) key during the setting, the setting is canceled.

# JOB Menu

This section describes the function of the JOB menu and the operating procedure for it.

## JOB Menu Functions

The JOB menu allows you to print a variety of log lists.

NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "JOB Menu Settings," on p. 6-40.

## Operating Procedure for the JOB Menu

This section describes the procedure for printing JOB LOG LIST. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Make sure that the printer is online.** | If the printer is not online, press the ⊷ (Online) key. |
| **2** **Display the JOB menu.** | Press the → (Job) key. |

The JOB menu is displayed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**3** **Select the item that you want to print.**

When JOB LOG LIST is selected

Press [◄] or [►].

The target item is displayed.

**4** **Print JOB LOG LIST.**

Press [OK].

JOB LOG LIST is printed.

NOTE

If you press the ●—● (Online) key during the setting, the setting is canceled.

# RESET Menu

This section describes the function of the RESET menu and the operating procedure for it.

## *RESET Menu Functions*

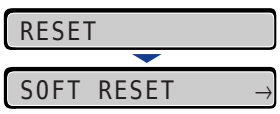
The RESET menu allows you to reset the printer (soft reset and hard reset) and output any print data remaining in the printer memory.

NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "RESET Menu Settings," on p. 6-41.

## *Operating Procedure for the RESET Menu*

This section describes the procedure for executing SOFT RESET as an example. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Display the RESET menu.**<br>  | Press the // (Reset) key.<br>The RESET menu is displayed. |
| **2** **Select the item that you want to execute.**<br>When SOFT RESET is selected<br> | Press [◄] or [►].<br>The target item is displayed. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| 3 | Determine the selected item. | Press [OK]. |
|---|---|---|

A soft reset is performed.

NOTE

HARD RESET is displayed after you keep holding down [OK] 3 seconds or more when SOFT RESET is displayed in the display.

# CANCEL JOB Menu

This section describes the function of the CANCEL JOB menu and the operating procedure for it.

## CANCEL JOB Menu Functions

The CANCEL JOB menu allows you to cancel only the job currently being received or processed.

Pressing the (Cancel Job) key and [OK] on the control panel while the job you want to cancel is being processed starts the cancel job process.

IMPORTANT

- Cancel the job while the printer is processing the data (While the (Job) indicator is on or blinking). No job is canceled by pressing the (Cancel Job) key when the (Job) indicator is off.
- The data that has already been processed and is being printed (started to be fed) cannot be canceled. In this case, the next print data may be canceled.
- When there is any print data sent from a printer driver other than that for this printer, multiple data may be canceled.

NOTE

When performing the (Cancel Job) key, you may not be able to cancel the job even if <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed.

## Operating Procedure for the CANCEL JOB Menu

Pressing the (Cancel Job) key and [OK] on the control panel while the job you want to cancel is being processed displays <03 CANCELING JOB> starts the cancel job process. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Cancel the job while the job is being processed.** | Press the (Cancel Job) key. |
| CANCEL? | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **2** | **Execute the job cancel process.**<br>03 CANCELING JOB | Press [OK].<br>Pressing [OK] starts the job cancel process. When not executing the cancel job process, press any key other than [OK]. After completing the job cancel, the printer is ready to print. |

# SELECT FEEDER Menu

This section describes the function of the SELECT FEEDER menu and the operating procedure for it.

## SELECT FEEDER Menu Functions

The SELECT FEEDER menu allows you to select the paper source, paper size, etc. After a paper source is selected, the corresponding (Paper Source) indicator comes on.

NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings," on p. 6-43.

## Operating Procedure for the SELECT FEEDER Menu

The SELECT FEEDER menu consists of two hierarchies: "Item" and "Setting Value". Select the target items in each hierarchy.

As an example of the setting procedure, this section describes the procedure for setting SLOT PAPER SIZE to B5. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Display the SELECT FEEDER menu.**<br>PAPER SOURCE → | Press the (Feeder Selection) key.<br>The SELECT FEEDER menu is displayed. |
| **2** **Select the item.**<br>When SLOT PAPER SIZE is selected<br>SLOT PAPER SIZE→ | Press [◄] or [►].<br>The target item is displayed. |
| **3** **Display the setting value.**<br>=A4 → | Press [OK].<br>The selected setting value is displayed. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**4** **Select the setting value.**

Press [◄] or [►].

When B5 is selected

The target setting value is displayed.

**5** **Determine the selected setting value.**

Press [OK].



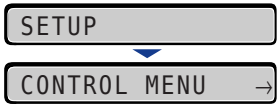


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Initializing the SETUP Menu

Initialization of the SETUP menu resets the settings specified in the SETUP menu to the default settings.

Initialize the menu by selecting INITIALIZE MENU in the hierarchy of "Options" in the SETUP menu. Start the key operation from Step 1.

| Operation Procedure | Key Operation |
|---|---|
| **1** **Display the SETUP menu.**   | Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.<br>The SETUP menu is displayed. |
| **2** **Select INITIALIZE MENU.** | Press [◄] or [►]. |
| **3** **Initialize the SETUP menu.** | Press [OK].<br>A confirmation message is displayed. |
| **4** **Confirm the message, then initialize the SETUP menu.** | Press [OK].<br><INITIALIZING> is displayed during the initialization. DONE is displayed after the initialization is completed. |

**IMPORTANT**

- If the message <INITIALIZE FAIL> appears when the initialization of the SETUP menu is executed, the SETUP menu is not initialized.
- Do not turn the printer OFF during the initialization. The printer memory may be damaged.
- Some settings do not become effective unless you cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset after initializing the SETUP menu.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

- If you press the ⊷ (Online) key during the setting, the setting is canceled. However, you cannot cancel the setting when <INITIALIZING> is displayed even if you press the ⊷ (Online) key.
- ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options and NETWORK MENU in the INTERFACE MENU options in the SETUP menu cannot be initialized.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1 Before Using the Printer

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the printer's features and the names of its parts. It also explains how to set up the printer, how to load paper and toner cartridges, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Checking the Package Contents . . . . . 1-8
Selecting a Location for the Installation Site . . . . . 1-9
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Setting Items

## SETUP Menu

### ■ CONTROL MENU Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| POWER SAVE MODE | PANEL OFF*, DEEP SLEEP, OFF | p. 6-10 |
| PWR SAVE IN ERR | ON*, OFF | p. 6-11 |
| POWER SAVE TIME | 15 minutes*, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, 180 minutes, 5 minutes | p. 6-11 |
| AUTO ERROR SKIP | OFF*, ON | p. 6-11 |
| PANEL LANGUAGE | ENGLISH*, FRENCH, GERMAN, ITALIAN, SPANISH | p. 6-12 |
| SHOW WARNINGS | CASSETTE EMPTY: ON*, OFF | p. 6-12 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

### ■ FEEDER MENU Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| SLOT PAPER SIZE | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5 | p. 6-12 |
| CASSETTE1 SIZE | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5 | p. 6-13 |
| CASSETTE2 SIZE*[1] | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5 | p. 6-14 |
| STD PAPER SIZE | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5 | p. 6-15 |
| SLOT PRIORITY | OFF*, ON | p. 6-15 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| INVLDPAPER SLOT | OFF*, ON | p. 6-16 |
| AUTO SELECTION | MANU.FEED SLOT: ON*, OFF<br>CASSETTE 1: ON*, OFF<br>CASSETTE 2*1: ON*, OFF | p. 6-16 |
| STD PAPER TYPE | PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER L, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER H, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, LABEL | p. 6-17 |
| 2-SIDED PRINT. | OFF*, ON | p. 6-18 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

*1 May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

## ■ LAYOUT MENU Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| COPIES | 1 to 9999; 1* | p. 6-19 |
| OFFSET Y | -50.0 to 50.0; 0.0* (mm) | p. 6-19 |
| OFFSET X | -50.0 to 50.0; 0.0* (mm) | p. 6-19 |
| BIND.LOCATION | LONG EDGE*, SHORT EDGE | p. 6-20 |
| GUTTER | -50.0 to 50.0; 0.0* (mm) | p. 6-21 |
| ALT.METHOD | ON*, OFF | p. 6-22 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

## ■ QUALITY MENU Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| IMGE REFINEMENT | ON*, OFF | p. 6-23 |
| GRADATION LEVEL | STANDARD*, HIGH | p. 6-23 |
| TONER SAVE | OFF*, ON | p. 6-24 |
| DENSITY | 1 to 16; 8* | p. 6-24 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| HALFTONES | TEXT:<br>RESOLUTION*, GRADATION, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL.<br>GRAPHICS:<br>COLOR TONE*, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION, GRADATION<br>IMAGE:<br>COLOR TONE*, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION, GRADATION | p. 6-24 |
| QUALITY CHANGE | CONT.PRINTING*, STOP PRINTING | p. 6-25 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

## ■ INTERFACE MENU Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| I/F CONNECTION | USB: ON*, OFF<br>NETWORK: ON*, OFF | p. 6-25 |
| MODE TIMEOUT | OFF, 5 to 300 seconds; 15 seconds* | p. 6-26 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| NETWORK MENU*1 | | |
|---|---|---|
| TCP/IP SETTINGS | IP MODE:<br>MANUAL*, AUTO<br>PROTOCOL*1:<br>DHCP.....OFF*, ON<br>BOOTP .....OFF*, ON<br>RARP.....OFF*, ON<br>IP SETTINGS:<br>IP ADDRESS ..... 0.0.0.0*<br>SUBNET MASK ..... 0.0.0.0*<br>GATEWAY ADDRESS ..... 0.0.0.0*<br>DNS:<br>PRIMARY ADD. ..... 0.0.0.0*<br>SECONDARY ADD. ..... 0.0.0.0*<br>WINS:<br>OFF*, ON<br>ARP/PING:<br>ON*, OFF<br>FTP:<br>FTP PRINT .....ON*, OFF<br>FTP SETTINGS.....ON*, OFF<br>LPD PRINT:<br>ON*, OFF<br>RAW PRINT:<br>ON*, OFF<br>IPP PRINT:<br>ON*, OFF<br>HTTP:<br>ON*, OFF<br>RESPONSE:<br>ON*, OFF<br>IP ADD.RANGE:<br>REJECT RX/PRT.....OFF*, ON<br>REJECT ADD.SET.*1 ..... REJ IP 1 to 8<br>PERMIT RX/PRT .....OFF*, ON<br>PERMIT ADD.SET.*1 .....PER IP 1 to 8<br>REJ SET/BROWSE .....OFF*, ON<br>REJECT ADD.SET.*1 ..... REJ IP 1 to 8<br>PMT SET/BROWSE .....OFF*, ON<br>PERMIT ADD.SET.*1 .....PER IP 1 to 8<br>MAC ADDRESS SET:<br>PERMIT RECEIVE .....OFF*, ON<br>PERMIT ADD.SET.*1 ..... PER.MAC ADD.1 to 50 | p. 6-27 |
| APPLETALK | OFF*, ON | p. 6-28 |
| SMB | SMB SERVER:<br>OFF*, ON | p. 6-28 |
| SNMP | ON*, OFF | p. 6-28 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| START WAIT TIME | 0 to 300 seconds; 0 seconds* | p. 6-28 |
| REMOTE UI SET. | REMOTE UI:<br>ON*, OFF | p. 6-29 |
| ETHERNET DRIVER | AUTO DETECT:<br>ON*, OFF<br>COMM.MODE*1:<br>HALF DUPLEX*, FULL DUPLEX<br>ETHERNET TYPE*1:<br>10 BASE-T*, 100 BASE-TX<br>MAC ADDRESS:<br>(Display only) | p. 6-29 |
| INIT.N/W SET. | - | p. 6-29 |
| CONNECT.RECOG. | ON*, OFF | p. 6-29 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

*1 May not be displayed depending on the settings for other items.

## ■ USER MAIN. Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| ADJ.START POS. | OFFSET Y(SLOT): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET X(SLOT): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET Y(CASS1): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET X(CASS1): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET Y(CASS2)*1: -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET X(CASS2)*1: -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET Y(DUP.): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)<br>OFFSET X(DUP.): -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm) | p. 6-30 |
| RECVRY PRINTING | ON*, OFF | p. 6-30 |
| SPECIAL MODE J | OFF*, ON | p. 6-31 |
| SUBSTITUTE SIZE | OFF*, ON | p. 6-31 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

*1 May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PCL SETUP Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| PAPER SAVE | OFF*, ON | p. 6-32 |
| ORIENTATION | PORTRAIT*, LANDSCAPE | p. 6-32 |
| FONT NUMBER | 0 to 54; 0* | p. 6-33 |
| POINT SIZE*1 | 4.00 to 999.75 point; 12.00 point* | p. 6-33 |
| PITCH*1 | 0.44 to 99.99 cpi; 10.00 cpi* | p. 6-33 |
| FORM LINES | 5 to 128 lines; 64 lines* | p. 6-33 |
| SYMBOL SET | PC8*, ROMAN8, ROMAN9, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, ISOL6, ISOL9, PC775, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC858, PC8TK, PC1004, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, WINBALT, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, LEGAL, ISO4, ISO6, ISO11, ISO15, ISO17, ISO21, ISO60, ISO69, WIN 30, MCTEXT | p. 6-34 |
| CUSTOM SIZE | DO NOT SET*, SET | p. 6-34 |
| UNIT OF MEASURE*1 | Millimeters*, Inches | p. 6-34 |
| X DIMENSION*1 | 76.2 to 215.9 mm; 215.9 mm* (3.00 to 8.50 inches; 8.50 inches*) | p. 6-34 |
| Y DIMENSION*1 | 127.0 to 355.6 mm; 355.6 mm* (5.00 to 14.00 inches; 14.00 inches*) | p. 6-35 |
| APPEND CR TO LF | NO*, YES | p. 6-35 |
| ENLRG A4 WIDTH | OFF*, ON | p. 6-36 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

*1 May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

## ■ UFR II SETUP Options

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| PAPER SAVE | ON*, OFF | p. 6-37 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## UTILITY Menu

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| CONFIG.PAGE | - | p. 6-38 |
| PCL UTILITY | FONTS LIST | p. 6-38 |
| CLEANING | - | p. 6-38 |
| NW STATUS PRINT | - | p. 6-39 |
| PRNTPOSNPRINT | - | p. 6-39 |

## JOB Menu

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| JOB LOG LIST | - | p. 6-40 |
| REPORTLOG LST | - | p. 6-40 |

## RESET Menu

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| SOFT RESET/HARD RESET | - | p. 6-41 |
| FORM FEED | - | p. 6-41 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# SELECT FEEDER Menu

| Item | Setting Value | Applicable Page |
|---|---|---|
| PAPER SOURCE | AUTO*, CASSETTE 1, CASSETTE 2*1, MANU.FEED SLOT | p. 6-43 |
| SLOT PAPER SIZE | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5 | p. 6-44 |
| CASSETTE1 SIZE | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5 | p. 6-44 |
| CASSETTE2 SIZE*1 | A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5 | p. 6-44 |
| 2-SIDED PRINT. | OFF*, ON | p. 6-44 |

An asterisk (*) indicates the default setting.

*1 May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## CONTROL MENU Options

### POWER SAVE MODE

PANEL OFF*, DEEP SLEEP, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use Power Save Mode.

There are two types of Power Save Mode, and the type of the mode the printer enters depends on the setting for this item.

| Setting Value | Power Save Mode the Printer Can Enter |
|---|---|
| PANEL OFF | Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) * |
| DEEP SLEEP | Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode)<br>Power Save Mode 2 (the Deep Sleep mode) |
| OFF | The printer does not enter Power Save Mode. * |

* Even if PANEL OFF or OFF is specified for this item, the printer enters Power Save Mode 2 (the Deep Sleep mode) when [Deep Sleep] is executed in the Remote UI ([Device Manager] → [Status] → [Device Control] → [Deep Sleep]).

Power Save Mode consumes less power during the sleep state. While the printer is in Power Save Mode, the display on the control panel is off, and the following indicators are on.

| Power Save Mode Type | Indicator that Comes On |
|---|---|
| Power Save Mode 1<br>(the Panel Off mode) | When the printer is online:<br>◯ (Ready) indicator, Power indicator<br>When the printer is offline:<br>⚠ (Message) indicator, Power indicator |
| Power Save Mode 2<br>(the Deep Sleep mode) | Power Indicator |

NOTE

• For details on Power Save Mode, see "Power Saving (Power Save Mode)," on p. 3-2.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• You can specify whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks). (See PWR SAVE IN ERR: the next item)

## PWR SAVE IN ERR

ON*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks).

If this item is set to ON, the printer enters Power Save Mode even when an error is occurring in the printer.

If this item is set to OFF, the printer does not enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer.

## POWER SAVE TIME

15 minutes*, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, 180 minutes, 5 minutes

Specifies the time interval until the printer enters Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode).

NOTE

If the printer is in any of the following status, the printer does not enter Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode) even when the specified time has elapsed.

- An error is occurring in the printer (when the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), and PWR SAVE IN ERR is set to OFF.
- During the printer's startup

## AUTO ERROR SKIP

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should automatically use the function that, when an error has occurred, releases the printer from the error temporarily (Error Skip) and continues the job.

If OFF is specified, you need to skip the error by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key.

If ON is specified, the printer skips the error automatically without you pressing the ⊷ (Online) key.

NOTE

• The Error Skip function is only for skipping an error temporarily. Therefore, the data may not be printed properly.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- For the types of error from which the printer can be released temporarily, see "Message List," on p. 8-27.
- If ON is specified for this item, the printer automatically skips all the errors it can skip automatically even when multiple errors are occurring.

### PANEL LANGUAGE

ENGLISH*, FRENCH, GERMAN, ITALIAN, SPANISH

Confirm the language that is displayed in the display.

### SHOW WARNINGS

CASSETTE EMPTY..... ON*, OFF

A Warning status is a status in which the printer requires some remedy although the job is not affected. When the printer is in this status, an indicator blinks.

This item allows you to specify whether an indicator should blink when the printer is in the following Warning status.

| Setting | Status | Indicator Blink |
|---|---|---|
| CASSETTE EMPTY | When the paper cassette has run out of paper | The (Paper Source) indicator for the paper source that has run out of paper blinks. |

NOTE

The printer prints when either ON or OFF is specified.

## FEEDER MENU Options

### SLOT PAPER SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

IMPORTANT

When you change the paper loaded in the manual feed slot frequently, it is convenient if SLOT PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES. If SLOT PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE each time you load the different size paper. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-31) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot do not match.
- When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

NOTE

- Select CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZER when you want to specify custom size paper using application and print it. If a message that prompts you to change the size of the paper appears during printing, press the •—• (Online) key to clear the error before printing again.
- You cannot print on any area within 10 mm of the edges of an envelope. (If you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in [Finishing Details] in UFR II Printer Driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. For more details, see Help of UFR II Printer Driver.)
- You can obtain the same result by specifying the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

## CASSETTE1 SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette in the printer unit (Cassette 1).

IMPORTANT

When you change the orientation of the custom size paper loaded in the paper cassette frequently, it is convenient if CASSETTE1 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE1 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for CASSETTE1 SIZE each time you change the paper orientation. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.

- Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-31) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette do not match.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

NOTE

- Select CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZER when you want to specify custom size paper using application and print it. If a message that prompts you to change the size of the paper appears during printing, press the ⊷ (Online) key to clear the error before printing again.
- You can obtain the same result by specifying the setting for CASSETTE1 SIZE in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

## CASSETTE2 SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette of the paper feeder (Cassette 2).

IMPORTANT

When you change the orientation of the custom size paper loaded in the paper cassette frequently, it is convenient if CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for CASSETTE2 SIZE each time you change the paper orientation. However, observe the following when specifying MIXED SIZES.

- Make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-31) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette do not match.
- When printing from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, when printing custom size paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not using UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

NOTE

- Select CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZER when you want to specify custom size paper using application and print it. If a message that prompts you to change the size of the paper appears during printing, press the ⊷ (Online) key to clear the error before printing again.
- You can obtain the same result by specifying the setting for CASSETTE2 SIZE in the SELECT FEEDER menu.
- This item is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## STD PAPER SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5

Specifies a standard paper size for when the printer cannot determine the size of the paper to process, such as when using paper that you cannot specify its size in an application.

**IMPORTANT**

When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify the paper size in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify the paper size, specify the size in this item.

## SLOT PRIORITY

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should detect the paper source in order starting with the manual feed slot when AUTO is specified in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

If OFF is specified, the printer detects if the size of the paper in a paper source matches the paper size of the received data in the following order.

Cassette 1 → Cassette 2 *1 → Manual Feed Slot

If ON is specified, the printer detects if the size of the paper in a paper source matches the paper size of the received data in the following order starting with the manual feed slot.

Manual Feed Slot → Cassette 1 → Cassette 2 *1

*1: Only when the optional paper feeder is installed

**IMPORTANT**

When any paper is in the manual feed slot, you cannot feed paper from the paper cassette. If you are printing from the paper cassette, remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

**NOTE**

- If INVLDPAPER SLOT (See the next item) is set to ON, the setting for this item is ignored, and the printer detects the paper source starting with the paper cassette. When paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source, the printer feeds paper from the manual feed slot.
- Specify the setting for automatic paper selection in PAPER SOURCE (See p. 6-43) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.
- This item is effective only when PAPER SOURCE in the SELECT FEEDER menu is set to AUTO.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Even if ON is specified for this item, the printer does not feed paper from the manual feed slot when the size of the paper in the manual feed slot is different from the paper size of the received data. However, if INVLDPAPER SLOT (See the next item) is set to ON, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the manual feed slot appears when the paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.

## INVLDPAPER SLOT

OFF*, ON

Specifies what the printer does when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.

If OFF is specified, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the paper cassette appears, and the printer stops printing.

If ON is specified, the printer feeds paper from the manual feed slot. If the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot is different from the paper size of the received data, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the manual feed slot appears, and the printer stops printing. When no paper is loaded in the manual feed slot, a message that informs you of the slot's paper-out condition appears, and the printer stops printing.

**IMPORTANT**

When any paper is in the manual feed slot, you cannot feed paper from the paper cassette. If you are printing from the paper cassette, remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

**NOTE**

If ON is specified for this item, the settings for MANU.FEED SLOT in AUTO SELECTION (See the next item) and SLOT PRIORITY (See the previous item) are ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the manual feed slot when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.

## AUTO SELECTION

MANU.FEED SLOT ..... ON*, OFF
CASSETTE 1 ..... ON*, OFF
CASSETTE 2*[1] ..... ON*, OFF

*1 CASSETTE 2 is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Specifies the paper source to be automatically selected when the automatic paper selection is specified in the SELECT FEEDER menu. Specify the setting for the manual feed slot and paper cassette individually.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If ON is specified, the printer selects the respective paper source as the paper source to be automatically selected. If OFF is specified, the printer does not select the respective paper source as the paper source to be automatically selected.

IMPORTANT

When any paper is in the manual feed slot, you cannot feed paper from the paper cassette. If you are printing from the paper cassette, remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

NOTE

- If INVLDPAPER SLOT (See the previous item) is set to ON, the setting for MANU.FEED SLOT in this item is ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the manual feed slot when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.
- Specify the setting for automatic paper selection in PAPER SOURCE (See p. 6-43) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

## STD PAPER TYPE

PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER L, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER H, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, LABEL

Specifies the default paper type. This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

Each print mode supports the following paper types.

- PLAIN PAPER L: Plain Paper (60 - 74 g/m$^2$)
- PLAIN PAPER: Plain Paper (75 - 90 g/m$^2$)
- HEAVY PAPER 1: Heavy Paper (91 - 120 g/m$^2$)
- HEAVY PAPER 2: Heavy Paper (121 - 163 g/m$^2$)
- HEAVY PAPER H: Specify when you want to improve the toner fixation on printing with STD PAPER TYPE set to HEAVY PAPER 2.
- TRANSPARENCIES: Transparencies
- ENVELOPE: Envelopes
- LABEL: Labels

IMPORTANT

When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify the paper type in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify the paper type, specify the paper type in this item.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 2-SIDED PRINT.

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should print on one side or both sides of the paper.

If ON is specified, the printer prints on both sides of the paper.

**IMPORTANT**

When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify 2-sided printing in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify 2-sided printing, specify the setting in this item.

**NOTE**

- You can perform automatic 2-sided printing only on plain paper (60 to 90 g/m$^2$) and heavy paper (91 to 120 g/m$^2$) at sizes of A4, Legal, and Letter. For more details, see "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2.
- When performing automatic 2-sided printing on paper with a logo, load the paper as the following.
  - When printing from the paper cassette, load the paper with the printing side of the first page facing up.
  - When printing from the manual feed slot, load the paper with the printing side of the first page facing down.
- You can obtain the same result by setting 2-SIDED PRINT. in the SELECT FEEDER menu.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## COPIES

1 to 9999; 1*

Specifies the number of copies to be printed.

The printer prints the specified number of copies.

## OFFSET Y/OFFSET X

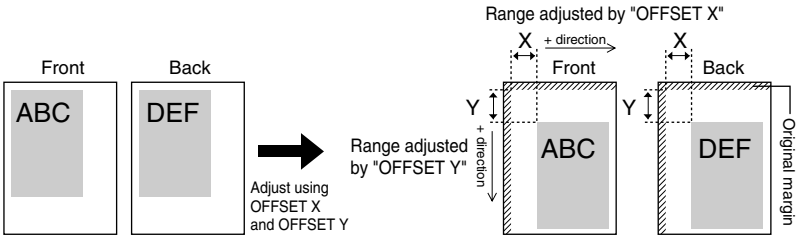
-50.0 to 50.0; 0.0* (mm)

Adjusts the printing position in the vertical direction (Y) or the horizontal direction (X) by the specified value.

The printing position changes as follows according to the increase and decrease of the specified value.

OFFSET Y: As the value increases, the gutter width in the Y direction increases.
As the value decreases, the gutter width in the Y direction decreases.

OFFSET X: As the value increases, the gutter width in the X direction increases.
As the value decreases, the gutter width in the X direction decreases.




**IMPORTANT**

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.

**NOTE**

Each time you press [ ► ], the value increases in 0.5 mm increments, and each time you press [ ◄ ], the value decreases in 0.5 mm increments. If you keep holding down [ ► ] or [ ◄ ], the speed of the value changing is increased.





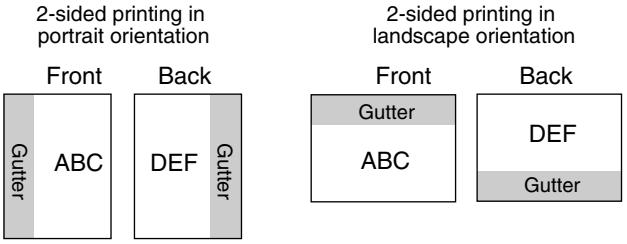
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## LONG EDGE*, SHORT EDGE

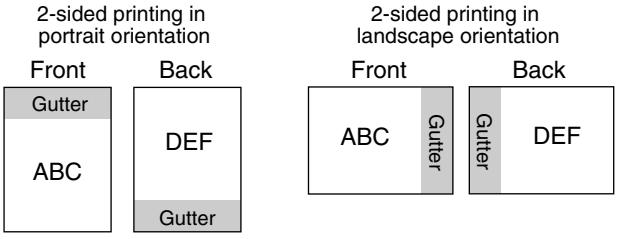
Specifies which edge of the paper, the long edge or short edge, is to be bound. When you want to bind paper on which 2-sided printing is performed, the printer adjusts the binding location automatically according to the paper surface.

Specify the binding location (top/bottom/left/right) and its width in GUTTER (See the next item).

If LONG EDGE is specified, the binding location is created on the long edge of the paper.




If SHORT EDGE is specified, the binding location is created on the short edge of the paper.




NOTE

You cannot create a gutter only by specifying this item. A gutter can be created only after specifying this item in combination with the setting for GUTTER.



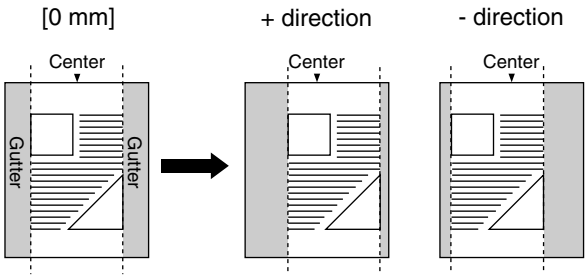


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## GUTTER

-50.0 to 50.0; 0.0* (mm)

Specifies the gutter width for printing with the binding location created. A gutter is created with the image shifted by the specified value. You can shift the image in the "+" direction with a positive value and in the "–" direction with a negative value.




Specify on which edge of the paper, the long edge or short edge, the gutter is to be created in BIND.LOCATION (See the previous item). On which edge (top/bottom/left/right) of the paper the gutter is created depends on the setting for BIND.LOCATION and which value "+" or "-" is specified for this item.

**IMPORTANT**

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after creating a gutter, the part will be missing in the print result.

**NOTE**

- Each time you press [ ► ], the value increases in 0.5 mm increments, and each time you press [ ◄ ], the value decreases in 0.5 mm increments. If you keep holding down [ ► ] or [ ◄ ], the speed of the value changing is increased.
- If the settings for OFFSET Y and OFFSET X are specified at the same time as the setting for this item is specified, the settings for OFFSET Y and OFFSET X are processed first, and then the setting for this item is processed.

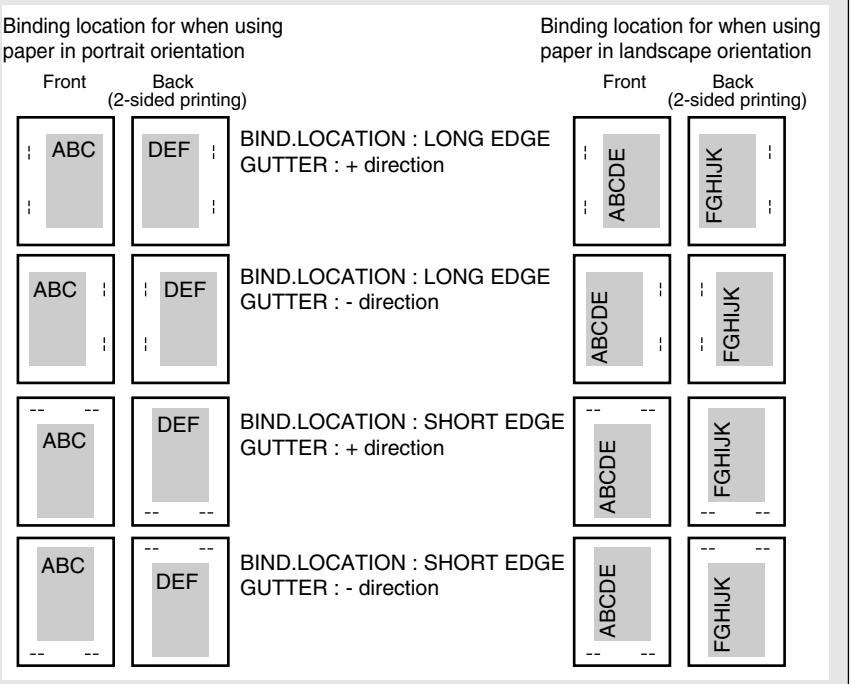




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ● Settings for BIND.LOCATION and GUTTER

Specify BIND.LOCATION and GUTTER referring to the following finishing image.




Specify whether you print in portrait orientation or landscape orientation in an application.

## ALT.METHOD

ON*, OFF

Specifies the printing side of the last page on a job with odd number of pages when 2-SIDED PRINT. (See p. 6-18) is set to ON.

The printing side of the last page varies depending on the setting for this item or paper source as the following.

- When printing from the paper cassette
  If ON is specified, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
  If OFF is specified, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
- When printing from the manual feed slot
  If ON is specified, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
  If OFF is specified, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Specify OFF for this item when you want to match the setting of the orientation or printing side for the last page with those for its previous page, such as when you want to print previously printed paper etc. whose printing orientation or printing side is fixed.

NOTE

This item is effective only when 2-SIDED PRINT. is set to ON.

# QUALITY MENU Options

## IMGE REFINEMENT

ON*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use Image Refinement that enables to print jagged outlines of text or graphics smoothly.

If ON is specified, the printer prints using Image Refinement.

If OFF is specified, the printer prints without using Image Refinement.

NOTE

- The effect of Image Refinement varies depending on the pattern of text or graphics (diagrams, charts, graphs, etc).
- If GRADATION LEVEL (See the next item) is set to HIGH, the setting for this item is ignored, and the printer prints in the same way as when OFF is specified.

## GRADATION LEVEL

STANDARD*, HIGH

Specifies the gradation level for data.

STANDARD is suitable to print thin lines or data of low resolution.

HIGH is suitable to print data of high resolution with complex gradations, such as photographs and graded images. You print data more clearly than when STANDARD is specified.

NOTE

If this item is set to HIGH, the setting for IMGE REFINEMENT (See the previous item) is ignored even if ON is specified for it, and the printer prints in the same way as when OFF is specified.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## TONER SAVE

OFF*, ON

The toner save mode is used to print a test page. If you use the toner save mode, you can print using less toner.

NOTE

If ON is specified for this item, print result may be faint and unclear. Parts to which gradation is applied in very light gray may appear denser in color.

## DENSITY

1 to 16; 8*

Adjusts the print density for the print data. As the setting value increases, the print density becomes denser.

## HALFTONES

TEXT .....RESOLUTION*, GRADATION, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL.
GRAPHICS ....COLOR TONE*, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION, GRADATION
IMAGE.....COLOR TONE*, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION, GRADATION

This setting specifies how to express halftones in black and white data.

Print data is expressed in dots. Fine gradations, edges, and shades are expressed by using dither patterns, which are groups of dots. This is called halftone processing.

For example, using a pattern that sharpens character and line edges, or a pattern that smoothens image and graph gradation, enables you to obtain the most suitable texture.

If RESOLUTION is selected, you can print text with distinct outlines, which is best to print text and thin lines.

If GRADATION is selected, you can print with both smooth gradation and outlines, which is best to print graphs and graphics that use gradation.

If COLOR TONE is selected, you can print with sharp gradation and well-balanced texture, contrasting light and shade, which is best for printing images.

If HIGH RESOL. is selected, finer printing can be done than with RESOLUTION, although toner stability is somewhat weaker. This is suited to printing small characters and fine lines, and outlines (such as from CAD data) sharply.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## QUALITY CHANGE

CONT.PRINTING*, STOP PRINTING

Specifies whether the printer should continue printing with the image quality level being lowered automatically or stop printing, displaying the following error message when the memory required for the process runs out.

| Error Message | Setting |
|---|---|
| <38 LOW IMGE QLTY> | When the printer receives a large amount of data or complicated data, the memory required for the process may run out, and the printer may print with the image quality level being lowered automatically. Specify whether the printer should display an error message when the printer is in this status. |

If CONT.PRINTING is specified, the printer prints with the image quality level being lowered automatically without displaying a message.

If STOP PRINTING is specified, the printer stops printing, displaying a message. In this case, the printer resumes printing with the image quality level being lowered by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key.

NOTE

When the message <38 LOW IMGE QLTY> appears frequently by specifying STOP PRINTING for this item, perform the following procedure.

- If GRADATION LEVEL is set to HIGH, set it to STANDARD. If you do so, however, the printer prints with the gradation level of the data being lowered.

# INTERFACE MENU Options

## I/F CONNECTION

USB .....ON*, OFF
NETWORK .....ON*, OFF

Specifies the settings for the interfaces used for communication with the computer, etc.

You can specify ON or OFF for each interface.

Even if multiple interfaces are set to ON, the printer automatically switches to the one that received the data first. Therefore, you do not need to change the setting in the printer each time you connect the printer to different types of interfaces at the same time.

IMPORTANT

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## MODE TIMEOUT

OFF, 5 to 300 seconds; 15 seconds*

Specifies the function to finish a job automatically.

If you specify the time the printer times out in this item, the printer can finish a job automatically when the specified time has elapsed since no data is entered.

If this item is specified, the printer can output paper automatically when data is remaining in the printer because of an application not sending the command to output paper.

When OFF is specified, the printer does not use the function to finish a job automatically.

**IMPORTANT**

If the function to finish a job automatically is specified, the job may be finished in the middle of the process when the computer takes a long time to process the data. In this case, adjust the time the printer times out.

**NOTE**

- The ⇨ (Job) indicator on the control panel is on or blinking during a job.
- When the printer is offline, the printer does not use the function to finish a job automatically.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ TCP/IP SETTINGS

IP MODE.....MANUAL*, AUTO
PROTOCOL*1
 DHCP.....OFF*, ON
 BOOTP .....OFF*, ON
 RARP.....OFF*, ON
IP SETTINGS
 IP ADDRESS .....0.0.0.0*
 SUBNET MASK .....0.0.0.0*
 GATEWAY ADDRESS .....0.0.0.0*
DNS
 PRIMARY ADD. .....0.0.0.0*
 SECONDARY ADD. .....0.0.0.0*
WINS .....OFF*, ON
ARP/PING.....ON*, OFF
FTP
 FTP PRINT .....ON*, OFF
 FTP SETTINGS .....ON*, OFF
LPD PRINT .....ON*, OFF
RAW PRINT .....ON*, OFF
IPP PRINT .....ON*, OFF
HTTP .....ON*, OFF
RESPONSE.....ON*, OFF
IP ADD.RANGE
 REJECT RX/PRT.....OFF*, ON
 REJECT ADD.SET.*2 .....REJ IP 1 to 8
 PERMIT RX/PRT .....OFF*, ON
 PERMIT ADD.SET.*2 .....PER IP 1 to 8
 REJ SET/BROWSE .....OFF*, ON
 REJECT ADD.SET.*2 .....REJ IP 1 to 8
 PMT SET/BROWSE .....OFF*, ON
 PERMIT ADD.SET.*2 .....PER IP 1 to 8
MAC ADDRESS SET
 PERMIT RECEIVE .....OFF*, ON
 PERMIT ADD.SET.*2 .....PER.MAC ADD.1 to 50

*1 PROTOCOL is displayed only when IP MODE is set to AUTO.

*2 REJECT ADD.SET. and PERMIT ADD.SET. are displayed only when REJECT RX/PRT, PERMIT RX/PRT, REJ SET/BROWSE, PMT SET/BROWSE, or PERMIT RECEIVE is set to ON.

Specifies the TCP/IP setting for the print server equipped with this printer.

**IMPORTANT**

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

- To enter a numeric value for IP ADDRESS, SUBNET MASK, or GATEWAY ADDRESS, press [ ◄ ] or [ ► ] to move the cursor to each field (an area separated by periods to enter three-digit numbers) in which you want to enter respective values of the address. The numbers in the field blinks, allowing you to enter the value. Pressing [ ▲ ] increases the value and [ ▼ ] decreases the value. After entering values in all the fields, press [OK] to confirm the setting.
- For more details on the setting, see "Chapter 3 Using the Printer on a TCP/IP Network (Windows/UNIX)" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

## ■ APPLETALK

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should use AppleTalk.

NOTE

- For more details on AppleTalk, see "Chapter 4 Using the Printer on an AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

## ■ SMB

SMB SERVER..... OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should use the SMB protocol.

## ■ SNMP

ON*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use the SNMP protocol.

NOTE

For more details on SNMP, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.

## ■ START WAIT TIME

0 to 300 seconds; 0 seconds*

Specifies the time interval from when the printer is turned ON to when the protocol starts.

NOTE

For more details on startup waiting time, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ REMOTE UI SET.

REMOTE UI.....ON*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use the Remote UI.

## ■ ETHERNET DRIVER

AUTO DETECT.....ON*, OFF
COMM.MODE*1.....HALF DUPLEX*, FULL DUPLEX
ETHERNET TYPE*1 .....10 BASE-T*, 100 BASE-TX
MAC ADDRESS.....(Display only)

*1 COMM.MODE and ETHERNET TYPE are displayed only when AUTO DETECT is set to OFF.

Configures the Ethernet driver.

NOTE

For more details on configuring the Ethernet driver, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.

## ■ INIT.N/W SET.

-

By the initialization in this item, you can reset the network settings to the default settings.

The network settings can be initialized using the following procedure.

1. Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.
2. Select INTERFACE MENU using [ ◄ ] and [ ► ], then press [OK].
3. Select NETWORK MENU using [ ◄ ] and [ ► ], then press [OK].
4. Select INIT.N/W SET. using [ ◄ ] and [ ► ], then press [OK].
5. <OK?> is displayed. The initialization starts by pressing [OK].

* If you press the ●⟷● (Online) key without pressing [OK], the printer does not initialize the settings but becomes ready to print.

NOTE

This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

# CONNECT.RECOG.

ON*, OFF

When you print using a network, you may not obtain proper printout results (Unreadable characters are printed, etc.). In this case, specify OFF for this item.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ADJ.START POS.

OFFSET Y(SLOT) ..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET X(SLOT) ..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET Y(CASS1)..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET X(CASS1) ..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET Y(CASS2)*1..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET X(CASS2)*1 ..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET Y(DUP.)..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)
OFFSET X(DUP.) ..... -5.0 to 5.0; 0.0* (mm)

*1 OFFSET Y(CASS2) and OFFSET X(CASS2) are displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Specifies the printing position of the paper in the specified paper source. Adjusts the position in the vertical direction (Y) or the horizontal direction (X) by the specified value.

The setting values are indicated in millimeters (mm), and you can adjust the position in 0.1 mm increments using [ ► ] and [ ◄ ].

If you do not adjust the printing position, specify "0.0" for this item.

OFFSET Y(DUP.) and OFFSET X(DUP.) allow you to specify the printing position of the first page of 2-sided printing. The second page of 2-sided printing follows the settings for each paper source.

**IMPORTANT**

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.

**NOTE**

- Each time you press [ ► ], the value increases in 0.1 mm increments, and each time you press [ ◄ ], the value decreases in 0.1 mm increments.
- You can check the adjusted printing position in PRNTPOSNPRINT (See p. 6-39) in the UTILITY menu.
- For adjusting the printing position, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-22.
- Be aware that, when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, the orientation of the images on the reverse pages varies depending on the printing orientation or setting for BIND.LOCATION (See p. 6-20).

## RECVRY PRINTING

ON*, OFF

Specifies whether to print the partially printed page when the printer stops printing due to a paper jam or an error occurring.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If ON is specified for this item, the printer prints from the page in which a paper jam or error occurred.

If OFF is specified for this item, the printer does not print from the partially printed page but prints from the next page when a paper jam or error has occurred.

When the printer is performing 2-sided printing, it does not print the reverse page of the partially printed page. The printing starts from the front side of the next sheet.

## SPECIAL MODE J

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE> or continue printing when SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES.

If OFF is specified, the printer may stop printing, displaying <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, when the paper size specified in the application is different from the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot or paper cassette. The paper on which the error occurred is output automatically. You can also continue printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the data may not be printed properly, or a paper jam may occur.

If ON is specified, the printer prints without performing a print check even when the paper size specified in the application is different from the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot or paper cassette. However, the printing speed may drop. Also, because the paper is printed at the paper size specified in the application, blank areas may appear on the printed paper or part of the images may be missing when the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot or paper cassette is different from the paper size specified in the application.

IMPORTANT

For automatic 2-sided printing, <41 CHK PAPER SZE> always appears and the printer stops printing regardless of the setting for this item.

## SUBSTITUTE SIZE

OFF*, ON

When the paper cassette for the paper size to be used is not set in the printer, the printer switches the paper source to the following paper cassettes and prints.

| Printer Driver Setting | | Size of the Paper to Be Printed |
|---|---|---|
| A4 | → | Letter |
| Letter | → | A4 |

If ON is specified, the printer switches the paper size.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If OFF is specified, the printer does not switch the paper size but stops printing, displaying an error message.

NOTE

Even if ON is specified, the printer does not switch the paper size when the paper source for the paper size is empty.

# PCL SETUP Options

## PAPER SAVE

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer outputs the blank page that can be created due to no data existing between two Form Feed codes sent from an application.

If ON is specified, the printer does not output the blank page. If OFF is specified, the printer outputs the blank page.

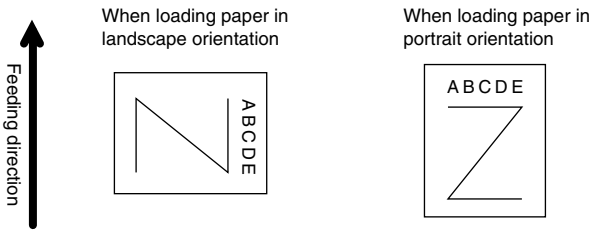
If you use this function, you can save paper because the blank pages are not output.

## ORIENTATION

PORTRAIT*, LANDSCAPE

Enables you to set the paper orientation.

If PORTRAIT is selected, the print image is printed in portrait orientation regardless of the orientation of the paper in the paper cassette.

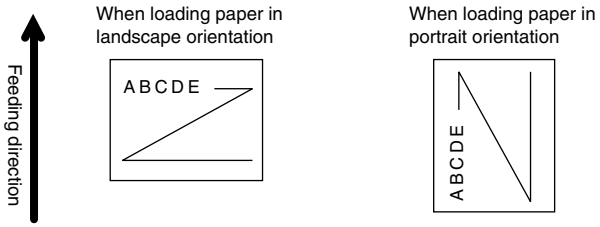







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If LANDSCAPE is selected, the print image is printed in landscape orientation regardless of the orientation of the paper in the paper cassette.




## FONT NUMBER

0 to 54; 0*

Eables you to set the default font typeface for this printer function using the corresponding font numbers. Valid font numbers are from 0 to 54.

## POINT SIZE

4.00 to 999.75 point; 12.00 point*

If the number selected in FONT NUMBER is that of a proportionally spaced scalable font, this option appears in the PCL SETUP options. It enables you to specify a point size for the default font. The point size can be adjusted in increments of 0.25 pts.

## PITCH

0.44 to 99.99 cpi; 10.00 cpi*

If the number selected in FONT NUMBER is that of a fixed pitch scalable font, Pitch appears in the PCL SETUP options. It enables you to specify the pitch for the default font. The pitch can be adjusted in increments of 0.01 cpi (characters per inch).

## FORM LINES

5 to 128 lines; 64 lines*

Enables you to specify the number of lines to be printed on a page. You can specify from 5 to 128 lines.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## SYMBOL SET

PC8*, ROMAN8, ROMAN9, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, ISOL6, ISOL9, PC775, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC858, PC8TK, PC1004, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, WINBALT, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, LEGAL, ISO4, ISO6, ISO11, ISO15, ISO17, ISO21, ISO60, ISO69, WIN 30, MCTEXT

Enables you to select the symbol set most suited to the needs of the host computer.

## CUSTOM SIZE

DO NOT SET*, SET

Enables you to specify a custom paper size. If SET is selected, you can enter a custom size.

NOTE

You can only select the custom paper size entered with settings from the printer driver.

## UNIT OF MEASURE

Millimeters*, Inches

Enables you to specify the unit of measurement you would like to use to specify your custom paper size.

NOTE

This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.

## X DIMENSION

76.2 to 215.9 mm; 215.9 mm*(3.00 to 8.50 inches; 8.50 inches*)

Enables you to specify the X dimension of the custom paper. The X dimension can be adjusted between 76.2 mm (3.00") and 215.9 mm (8.50") in increments of 0.1 mm (0.01").

This function can be very useful when part of the printed image is cut off. Increasing this dimension may allow some of the missing text to be correctly printed. Make sure you do not increase the X dimension beyond the actual size of the paper you are using for printing.

NOTE

This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Y DIMENSION

127.0 to 355.6 mm; 355.6 mm*(5.00 to 14.00 inches; 14.00 inches*)

Enables you to specify the Y dimension of the custom paper. The Y dimension can be adjusted between 127.0 mm (5.00") and 355.6 mm (14.00") in increments of 0.1 mm (0.01").

This function can be very useful when part of the printed image is cut off. Increasing this dimension may allow some of the missing text to be correctly printed. Make sure you do not increase the Y dimension beyond the actual size of the paper you are using for printing.

NOTE

This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.

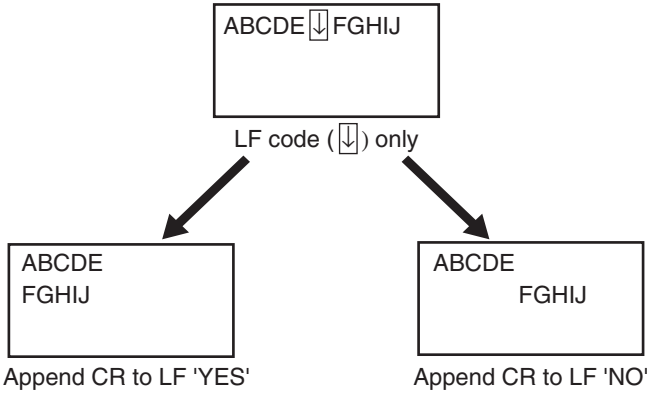
## APPEND CR TO LF

NO*, YES

Enables you to specify whether to append a carriage return (CR) when line feed code (LF) is received.

If YES is selected, the print head moves to the beginning of the next line when line feed code is received.

If NO is selected, the print head moves down to the next line when line feed code is received, and the margin does not change (such as to the beginning of the next line).








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

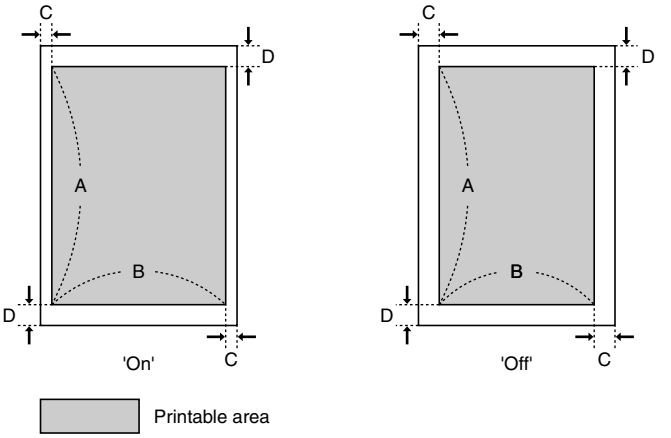
## ENLRG A4 WIDTH

OFF*, ON

Determines whether to expand the printable area of A4 size paper to that of Letter size in width.

If ON is selected, all the area on a page 4.23 mm (1/6") from the top and bottom edges and 3.39 mm (1/8") from the left and right edges is available for printing on A4 paper. Only the width increases.

If OFF is selected, all the area on a page 4.23 mm (1/6") from the top, bottom, left, and right edges is available for printing on A4 paper.




| Settings | ON | OFF |
|---|---|---|
| A: Length | 288.54 mm (11 1/3") | |
| B: Width | 203.22 mm (8") | 201.54 mm (7 7/8") |
| C: Left and right edges | 3.39 mm (1/8") | 4.23 mm (1/6") |
| D: Top and bottom edges | 4.23 mm (1/6") | |

NOTE

- This setting is applicable for A4 paper only.
- This setting is applicable for portrait orientation only.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## PAPER SAVE

ON*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer outputs the blank page that can be created due to no data existing in the page data sent from an application.

If ON is specified, the printer does not output the blank page. If OFF is specified, the printer outputs the blank page.

If you use this function, you can save paper because the blank pages are not output.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

For the output samples of CONFIG.PAGE, NW STATUS PRINT, and PRNTPOSNPRINT, see "The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode," on p. 10-2. For the output sample of the PCL fonts list, see "The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode," on p. 10-4.

## CONFIG.PAGE

-

Prints the capacity of the built-in memory (RAM) or the contents specified in the SETUP menu. You can select this item regardless of the setting for the operation mode.

NOTE

CONFIG.PAGE is designed to be printed on A4 size paper. Load a sheet of A4 size paper in the paper cassette or manual feed slot.

## PCL UTILITY

FONTS LIST

Prints internal information of the printer in the PCL mode.

**FONTS LIST**

A list of the fonts that can be used in the PCL mode is printed.

## CLEANING

-

The printer cleans the fixing roller by printing a cleaning page.

If CLEANING is executed, <CLEANING1 PAPER> is displayed. Load a sheet of A4 size paper in the manual feed slot, then press the ●—● (Online) key.

A cleaning paper is printed. Load the cleaning paper with the printed side facing down in the manual feed slot, then press the ●—● (Online) key. The loaded cleaning paper is fed, cleaning inside fixing roller.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

For details on cleaning the fixing roller see "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 7-19.

## NW STATUS PRINT

-

Prints the version number and the settings of the print server equipped with this printer.

## PRNTPOSNPRINT

-

The printing position adjusted in ADJ.START POS. (See p. 6-30) is printed. Check the printout results to confirm the setting for ADJ.START POS.

NOTE

For adjusting the printing position, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-22.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## JOB LOG LIST

-

Prints the job logs printed from the computer.

File names and print dates are printed on the job log list.

NOTE

- If the printer has no job log, nothing is printed.
- Up to 48 job logs are printed on the job log list.

## REPORTLOG LST

-

Prints the job logs of the printed CONFIG.PAGE or NW STATUS PRINT.

Print dates, etc are printed on the report log list.

NOTE

- If the printer has no job log, nothing is printed.
- Up to 16 job logs are printed on the report log list.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# RESET Menu Settings

## SOFT RESET/HARD RESET

-

Resets the printer when a problem has occurred or you want to cancel printing.

If you perform a soft reset, the printer stops the current process and deletes the jobs in the printer memory, received print data, and the job being processed. If you perform a hard reset, the printer cancels all the process and deletes the jobs.

To perform a soft reset, select SOFT RESET in the RESET menu, and then press [OK].

To perform a hard reset, select SOFT RESET in the RESET menu, hold down [OK] for 3 seconds or more to display HARD RESET, and then release the button.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to cancel printing from the computer before performing a soft reset.
- When the soft reset or hard reset is performed, the data being printed and the data being received by all the interfaces is deleted. Therefore, perform printing from the computer again as needed.
- If you perform a soft reset or hard reset, the data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so that this operation does not affect the data from other computers when resetting the printer.
- If you perform a hard reset while the printer is receiving data, the data that has not yet been sent to the memory will be sent after the reset. However, the data may not be printed properly.

## FORM FEED

-

When a job is canceled from the computer or the data is less than one page, the data may remain in the printer memory, and the job may not be completed properly. As long as the printer remains in this status, you cannot print the next job because the printer cannot receive the next data. In this case, force the printer to output the print data using the procedure for this item.

IMPORTANT

- Print data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver cannot be output.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- If you have output data, the data being printed is deleted. Print the data from the computer again.

NOTE

- The (Job) indicator is on when any print data remains in the printer memory or when no print data remains in the printer but a job has not yet been completed.
- If MODE TIMEOUT for a job is specified, data less than one page is also output automatically when the specified time has elapsed (Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver is not output.). MODE TIMEOUT for a job is set to 15 seconds in the default settings.
- If the (Job) indicator does not go off even after outputting the data, perform a soft reset. (See the previous item)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

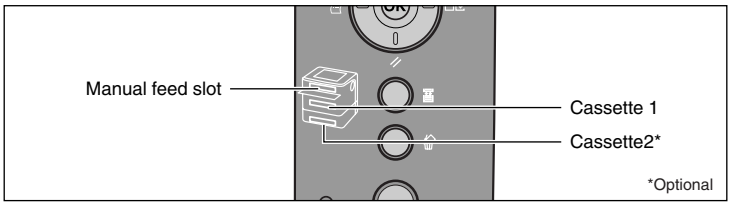
# SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings

## PAPER SOURCE

### AUTO*, CASSETTE 1, CASSETTE 2*[1], MANU.FEED SLOT

*1 CASSETTE 2 is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Selects the paper cassette or manual feed slot from which the printer feed paper. After a paper source is selected, the corresponding (Paper Source) indicator comes on.




**IMPORTANT**

When any paper is in the manual feed slot, you cannot feed paper from the paper cassette. If you are printing from the paper cassette, remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

**NOTE**

- The installed paper cassettes and manual feed slot usually become the target paper source when the printer feeds paper automatically. However, you can except them from the target paper source.
- If paper of the same size is loaded in 2 or more paper sources when the paper source setting is specified to be selected automatically, paper is fed from the upper paper source regardless of the status of the (Paper Source) indicators. When the paper source runs out of paper, the paper source switches to other one in which paper of the same size is loaded.
- If INVLDPAPER SLOT (See p. 6-16) is set to ON, the setting for this item is ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the manual feed slot when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.
- When feeding paper from the manual feed slot, you need to specify the size of the loaded paper previously. The default value is "A4".





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## SLOT PAPER SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, 16K, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot.

You can obtain the same result by specifying the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "SLOT PAPER SIZE," on p. 6-12.

## CASSETTE1 SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette in the printer unit (Cassette 1).

You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE1 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "CASSETTE1 SIZE," on p. 6-13.

## CASSETTE2 SIZE

A4*, LTR, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZER, A5, B5

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette of the paper feeder (Cassette 2).

You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE2 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "CASSETTE2 SIZE," on p. 6-14.

NOTE

This item is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

## 2-SIDED PRINT.

OFF*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should print on one side or both sides of the paper.

You can specify the same setting in 2-SIDED PRINT. in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "2-SIDED PRINT.," on p. 6-18.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1 Before Using the Printer

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the printer's features and the names of its parts. It also explains how to set up the printer, how to load paper and toner cartridges, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Checking the Package Contents . . . . . 1-8
Selecting a Location for the Installation Site . . . . . 1-9
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Replacing the Toner Cartridge

This section describes how to replace or handle the toner cartridges and precautions on storing them.

Contact the store where you purchased the printer to obtain replacement toner cartridges.

**IMPORTANT**

No message appears in the display even if the toner cartridge is nearing the end of its life. The case where white streaks appear on printed paper in longitudinal direction, or printed paper comes out faint or uneven can be used to estimate when the toner cartridge will need to be replaced. When you are replacing the toner cartridge, be sure to use a toner cartridge designed for this printer.

**NOTE**

- Two types of toner cartridge that have different lifetime (Canon Genuine Cartridges) are available for this printer.
- The lifetime of the toner cartridges (Canon Genuine Cartridges) designed for this printer is approximately 2,500 pages or 6,000 pages. The page counts are on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19752"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting. The level of toner consumption varies depending on the type of documents printed. If your average document contains a lot of diagrams, charts, or graphs, the life of the toner cartridge will be shorter as they consume more toner.
  * "ISO/IEC 19752" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that may contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).
- This section describes the procedure, taking the toner cartridge with its lifetime of approximately 2,500 pages (Canon Genuine Cartridges) as an example.



## Before Replacing the Toner Cartridge

Toner cartridges are consumable products. When there is not enough toner, this may cause the case where white streaks appear on the printed paper in longitudinal direction, or the printed paper comes out faint or uneven. If this type of symptom may occur, perform the following procedure before replacing the toner cartridge. You may be able to print for a while until the toner is used up completely.

**CAUTION**

**Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.**



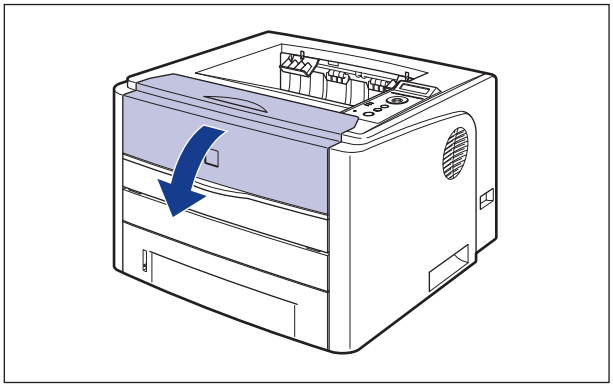
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

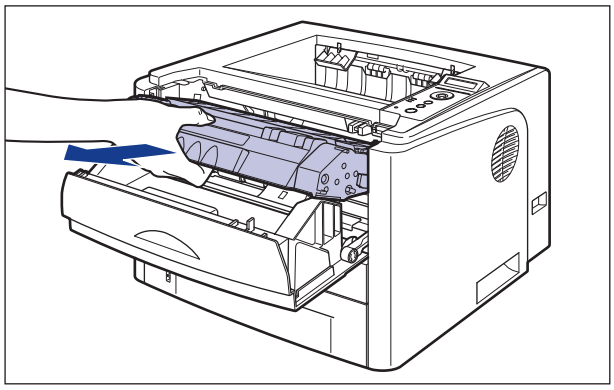
For details on handling toner cartridges, see "Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-14.

## 1 Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.



## 2 Remove the toner cartridge from the printer.



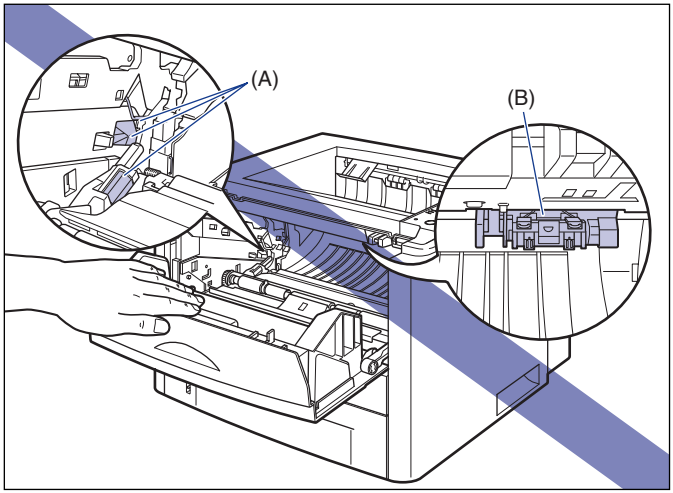




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

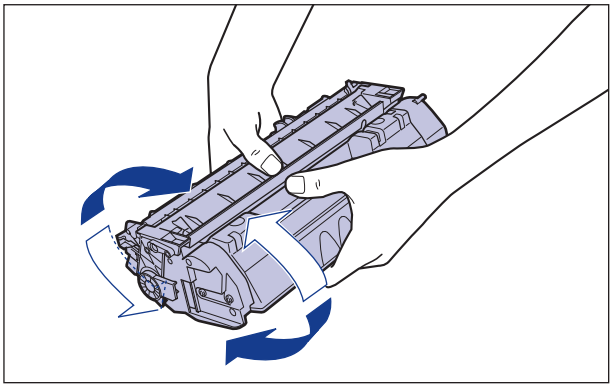
IMPORTANT

Do not touch the high-voltage contact (A) or the electrical contacts (B) shown in the figure, as this may result in damage to the printer.




### 3 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure and shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.

Be careful not to spill the toner.



IMPORTANT

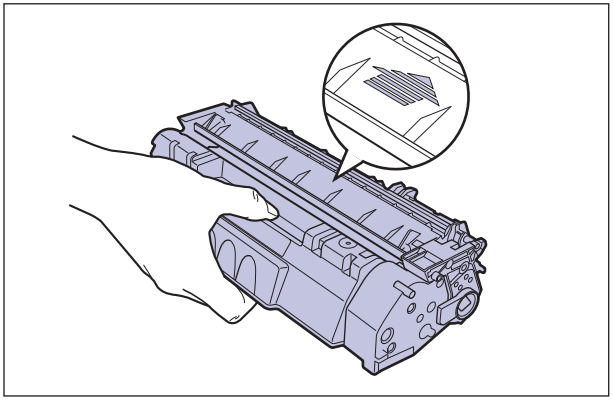
- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality. Be sure to carry out this procedure properly.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently. If you do not shake the cartridge gently, toner may spill out.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**4** **Hold the toner cartridge properly with the arrowed side facing up as shown in the figure.**

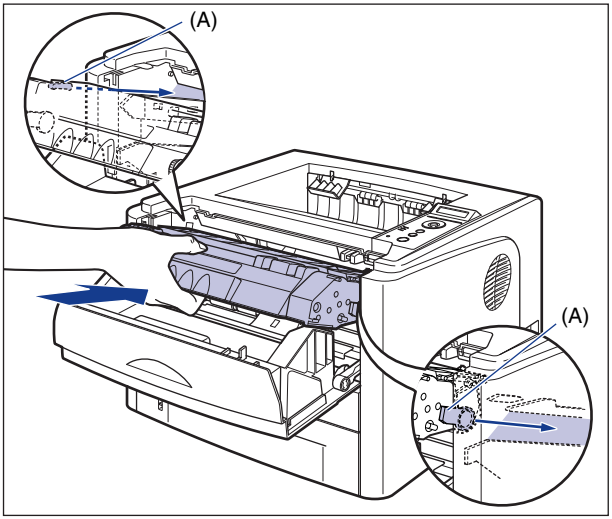


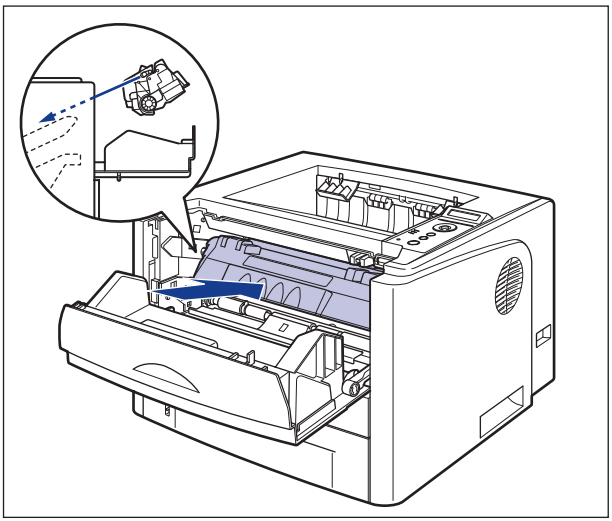




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**5** **Push the toner cartridge into the printer until it touches the back of the printer while aligning (A) on both sides of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer.**



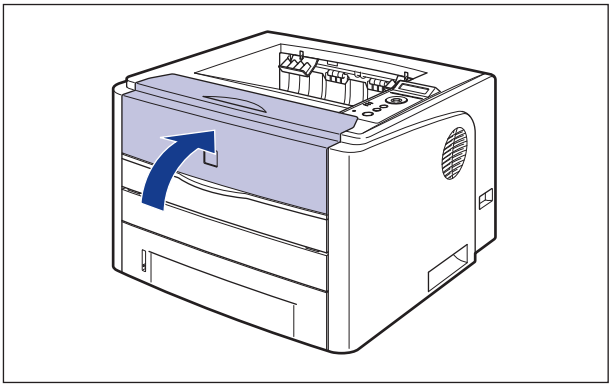







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 6 Close the front cover.



IMPORTANT

- If you cannot close the front cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the front cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer or toner cartridge.
- Do not leave the front cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

If the print is too thin even after performing the operation above, replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

# Replacing the Toner Cartridge

Replace the toner cartridge with a new one using the following procedure.

**WARNING**

**Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.**

**CAUTION**

**Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.**

IMPORTANT

- Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.
- Be sure to use only the toner cartridges designed for this printer.





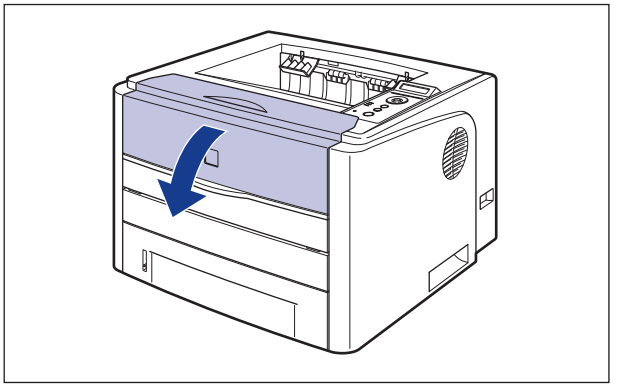
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

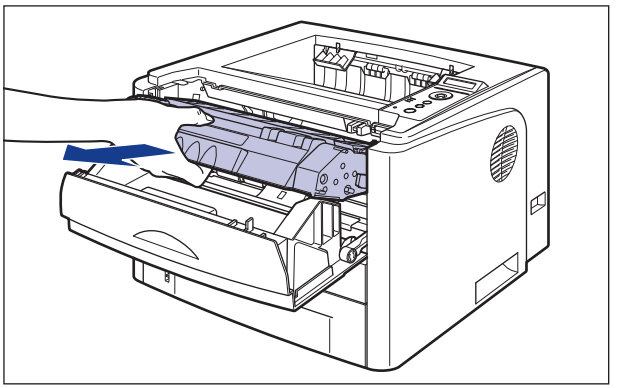
- For details on handling toner cartridges, see "Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-14.
- The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

## 1 Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.



## 2 Remove the toner cartridge from the printer.



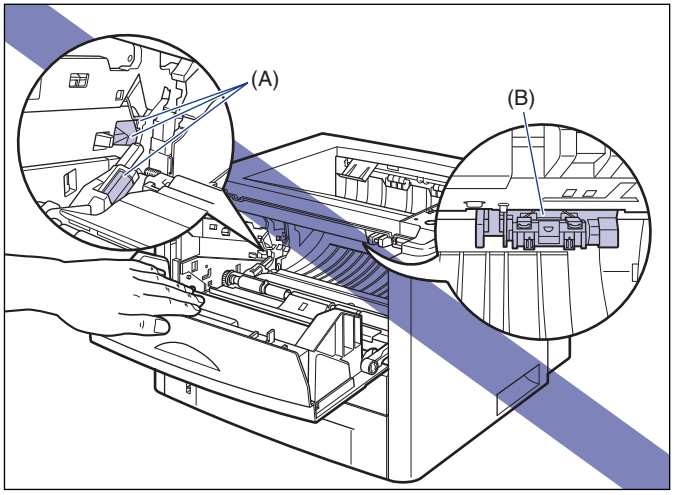




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

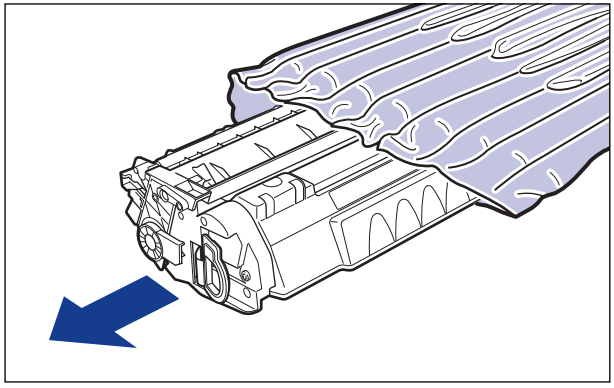
IMPORTANT

Be sure not to touch the high-voltage contacts (A) or electrical contact (B) shown in the figure, as this may result in damage to the printer.




## 3 Take the new toner cartridge out of the protective bag after taking it out of the package.

There is a cut near the arrow on the protective bag, so you can open it by hand. However, if you cannot open it by hand, use scissors to open the protective bag so as not to damage the toner cartridge.



IMPORTANT

Keep the protective bag for the toner cartridge. It may be required after taking out the toner cartridge for printer maintenance.



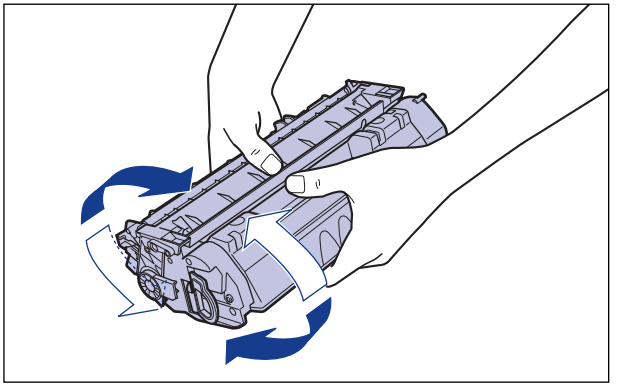


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

The shape of the protective bag for the toner cartridge supplied with this printer is different from that in the above illustration. There are cuts on both sides of the protective bag for the supplied toner cartridge, so you can open it by hand.

## 4 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure, and shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.



IMPORTANT

- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality. Be sure to carry out this procedure properly.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently. If you do not shake the cartridge gently, toner may spill out.

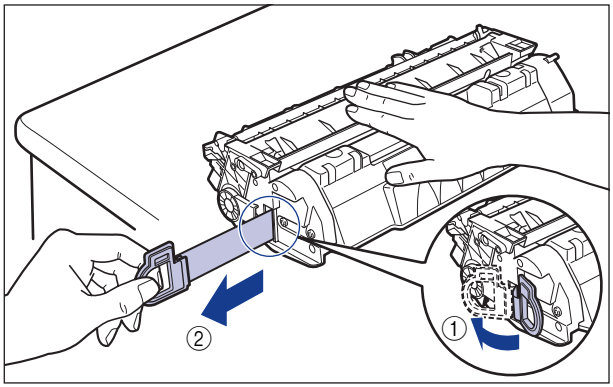




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 5 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface, fold back the tab of the sealing tape ①, and then pull out the sealing tape (approx. 45 cm long) gently ② while supporting the toner cartridge.

Remove the sealing tape by hooking your fingers into the tab and pulling it out straight in the direction of the arrow.

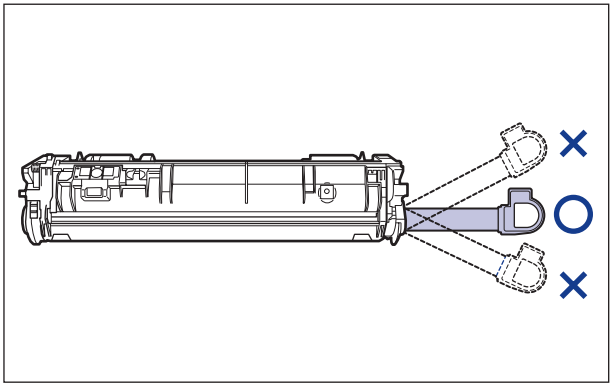



**CAUTION**

**If the sealing tape is pulled out forcefully or stopped at midpoint, toner may spill out. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.**

IMPORTANT

- Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally, upwards, or downwards. If the tape is severed, it may become difficult to pull out completely.



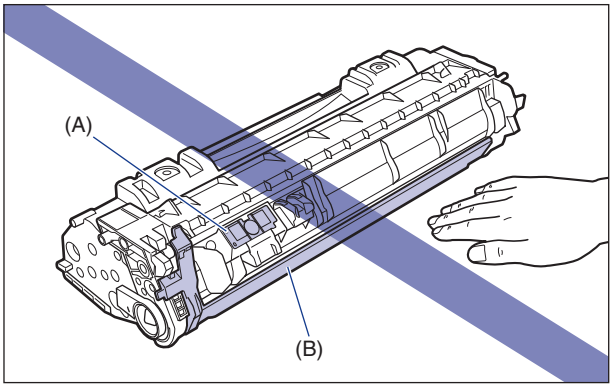
- Pull out the sealing tape completely from the toner cartridge. If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.



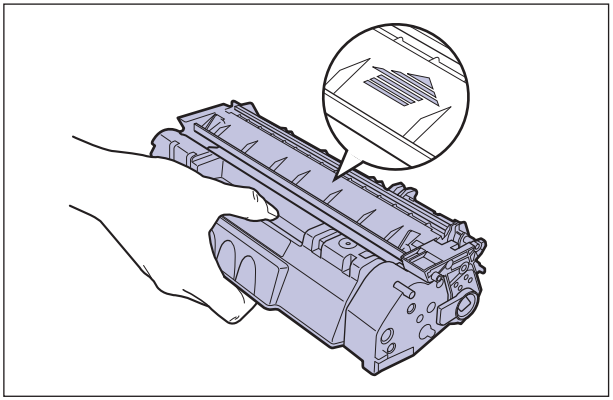


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• When pulling out the sealing tape, be careful not to touch the toner cartridge memory (A) or hold the drum protective shutter (B) with your hands.




## 6 Hold the toner cartridge properly with the arrowed side facing up as shown in the figure.

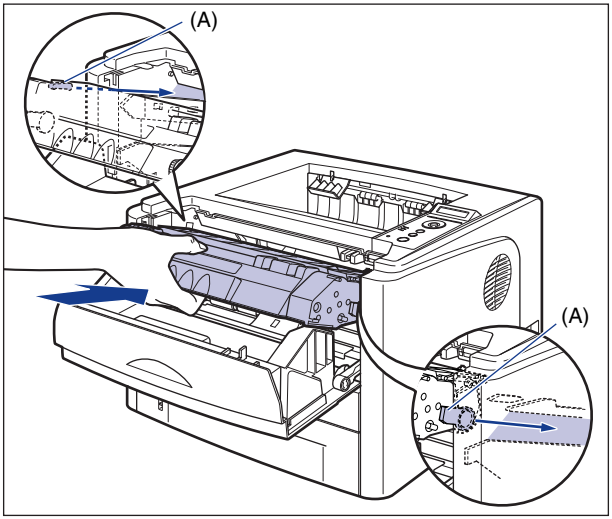


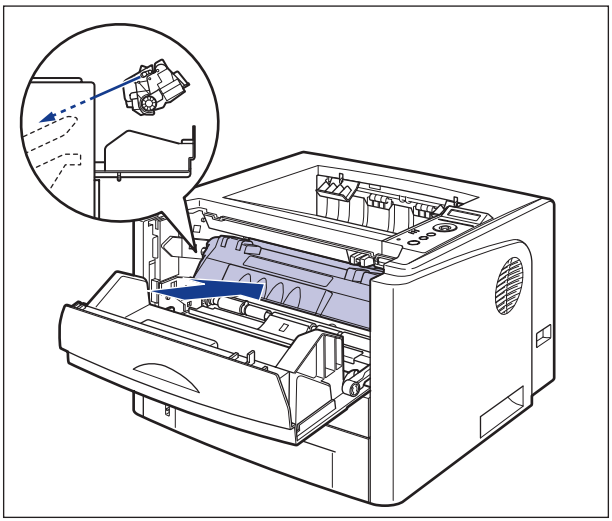




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**7** **Push the toner cartridge into the printer until it touches the back of the printer while aligning (A) on both sides of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer.**



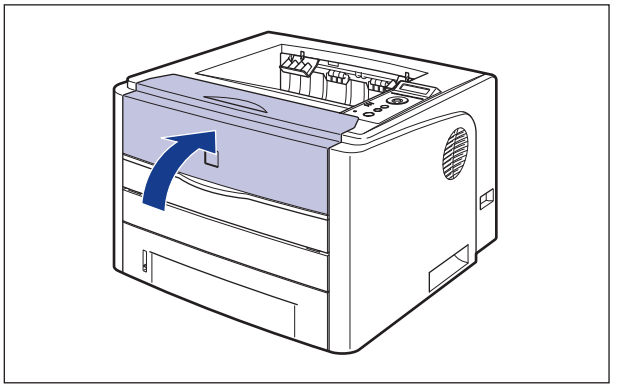




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 8 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.



IMPORTANT

- If you cannot close the front cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the front cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer or toner cartridge.
- Do not leave the front cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.



# Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges

A toner cartridge consists of light-sensitive components and intricate mechanical components. Handling the toner cartridge without due care may lead to damage to the toner cartridge or deterioration in print quality. Be careful of the following points when removing or installing the toner cartridge.

**WARNING**

**Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.**

**CAUTION**

**Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.**

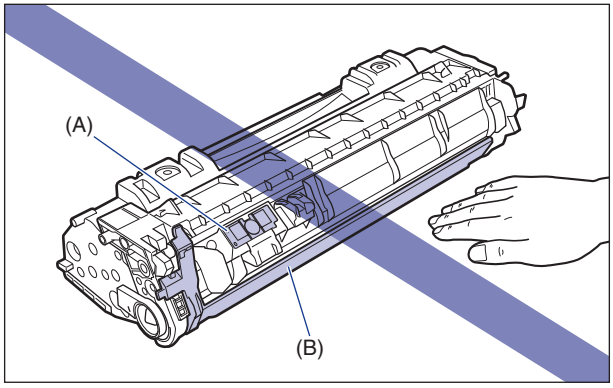
IMPORTANT

- When you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for servicing the printer, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- Do not expose the toner cartridge to direct sunlight or strong light.

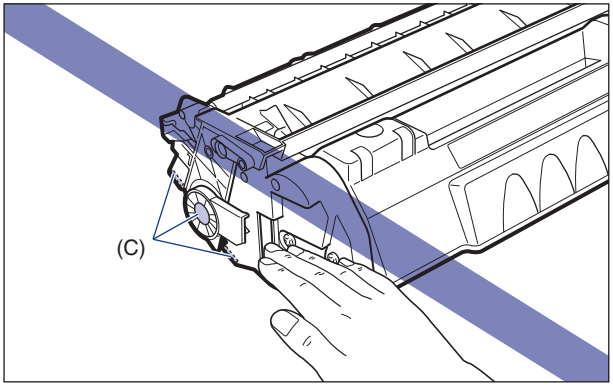


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• Do not jolt the toner cartridge memory (A) or bring it near a magnetic field. This may result in damage to the cartridge. Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the photosensitive drum inside the toner cartridge. Be sure not to touch or open the drum protective shutter (B).




• Be careful not to hold or touch areas that are not specified in this procedure, such as the electrical contacts (C). This may result in damage to the cartridge.

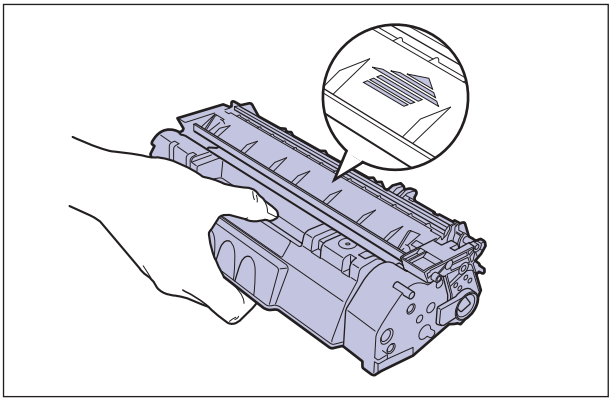







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- When handling a toner cartridge, hold it properly as shown in the figure and handle it with the arrowed side facing up. Do not place it vertically or upside-down.



- Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the toner cartridge.
- Condensation may form in and on a toner cartridge if it is brought into an environment that exposes it to sudden changes in temperature and/or humidity. If you move the toner cartridge to a location that is warmer or has higher humidity, leave the cartridge in the new location for 2 hours or longer without opening the protective bag to allow it to adjust to the new temperature.
- Be sure to use a new toner cartridge before the expiration date indicated on the package.
- Keep the toner cartridge away from products that generate magnetic waves, such as a display or computer.
- A toner cartridge is a magnetic product. Keep the toner cartridge away from products that may be damaged by magnetic waves, such as a floppy disk or disk drive. This may lead to damage to data.



## Storing Toner Cartridges

Be careful of the following points when storing a new toner cartridge or handling a toner cartridge that has been taken out of the printer for maintenance or moving the printer.

IMPORTANT

- Do not take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag until it is ready to be used.
- When you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for servicing the printer or other purposes, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- Do not place it vertically or upside-down. Store the toner cartridge in the same orientation as when installed in the printer.
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place exposed to direct sunlight.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Do not store cartridges in a hot or humid place, or a place where the temperature and humidity can change significantly.
  Storing environment temperature: 0 to 35°C (32 to 95°F)
  Storing humidity range: 35 to 85% RH (no condensation)
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place where corrosive gases, such as ammonia, are generated, or where a considerable amount of salt is contained in the air, or where there is a lot of dust.
- Keep the toner cartridge out of the reach of small children.
- Keep the toner cartridge away from products that may be damaged by magnetic waves, such as a floppy disk or disk drive.

## ■ Condensation

Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets may develop both inside and outside of the toner cartridge due to the difference in temperature. The development of water droplets is called condensation. Condensation will adversely affect the quality of the toner cartridge.



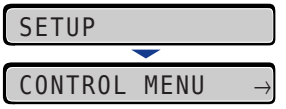


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Adjusting the Print Density

Adjust the print density using the following procedure when the printout result is too dense or too light in color. The toner density is set to the standard density (8) before shipment. You can adjust the toner density between 1 and 16.

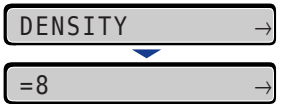
## 1 Press the ☐☑ (Settings) key.



## 2 Select QUALITY MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

The item for QUALITY MENU is displayed.

## 3 Select DENSITY using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].




The setting value for DENSITY is displayed.

## 4 Specify the target numeric value using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

Pressing [ ◄ ] decreases the value, and the print density becomes lighter.
Pressing [ ► ] increases the value, and the print density becomes denser.

"=" is displayed on the left of the value, and the density is specified.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Cleaning the Fixing Roller

When the front or back of the printed paper has smudge marks, clean the fixing roller using the following procedure. Print quality deterioration can be prevented by cleaning the fixing roller.

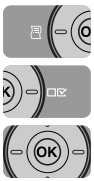
IMPORTANT

- The cleaning paper cannot be printed on any paper other than A4. Be sure to use A4 size paper.
- To print a cleaning paper, load a sheet of A4 size paper in the manual feed slot.

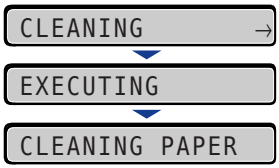
## 1 Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press the ⊷ (Online) key.

## 2 Press the (Utility) key.



## 3 Select CLEANING using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



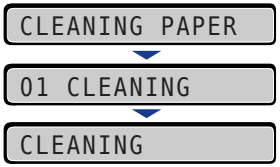

<CLEANING PAPER> appears in the display, and the printer waits to print the cleaning paper.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

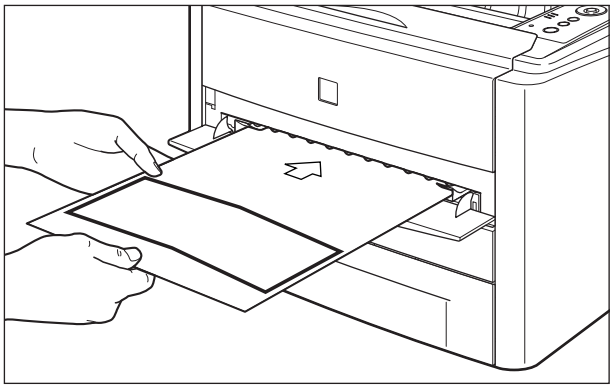
**4** **Load a sheet of A4 size paper in the manual feed slot, then press the ⟷ (Online) key.**



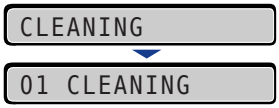

The cleaning paper is printed.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**5** **Load the cleaning page with the printed side facing down and the arrow mark going into the manual feed slot first.**



**6** **Press the ⟷ (Online) key.**




The paper is fed into the printer slowly, and the printer starts cleaning the fixing roller.

NOTE

- Cleaning takes approximately 90 seconds.
- The cleaning process cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.
- When the front or back of the printed paper has smudge marks even after performing the procedure above, perform the cleaning again. When doing so, do not use the cleaning paper output in Step 4 above but load A4-size blank paper in the manual feed slot, and then perform the cleaning.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Adjusting the Printing Position

If the printing position is skewed when printing from a certain paper source, you can adjust the position from the control panel.

IMPORTANT

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.

NOTE

Be aware that, when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, the orientation of the images on the reverse pages varies depending on the printing orientation or setting for BIND.LOCATION.

## Checking the Printing Position

Perform the Printing Position Adjustment Print and check the position and direction to be adjusted.

IMPORTANT

When adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, set 2-SIDED PRINT. (See p. 6-18) to ON previously.

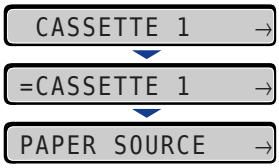
### 1 Press the (Feeder Selection) key.

When adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, select the desired paper source.

### 2 Select PAPER SOURCE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**3** **Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**



**4** **Press the ⟷ (Online) key.**

**5** **Make sure that the printer is online.**

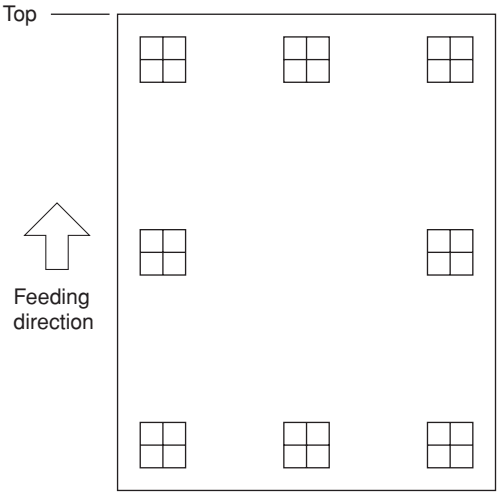
If the printer is not online, press the ⟷ (Online) key.

**6** **Press the (Utility) key.**

**7** **Select PRNTPOSNPRINT using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].**

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The Printing Position Adjustment Print is printed as shown in the following. The top of the output paper is the top of the Printing Position Adjustment Print.



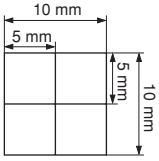

Next, check the printout results and specify the direction and position to be adjusted in "Adjusting the Printing Position" (See the next item).



## Adjusting the Printing Position

Next, check the printout results of the Printing Position Adjustment Print and specify the direction and position to be adjusted.

The measurements of "⊞" printed on paper are as the following:



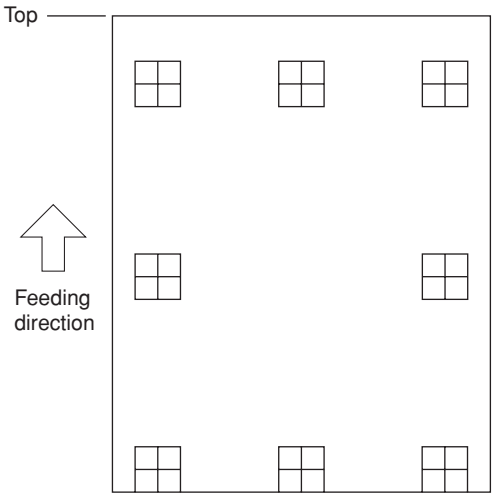

* 5 mm from each edge of paper

This section describes the setting procedure for the following Printing Position Adjustment Print printed with Cassette 1 specified, as an example.



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

In this case, adjust the printing position by -5.0 mm upward.




IMPORTANT

OFFSET Y (DUP.) and OFFSET X (DUP.) allow you to specify the printing position of the first page of 2-sided printing. The second page of 2-sided printing follows the settings for each paper source.

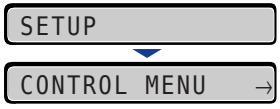
NOTE

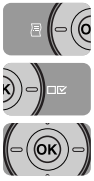
The printing position can be adjusted within a range from + 5.0 to - 5.0 mm.

### 1 Press the ⊷ (Online) key.

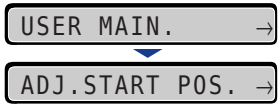
The ⊷ (Online) indicator goes off, allowing you to specify the settings on the control panel.

### 2 Press the □☑ (Settings) key.



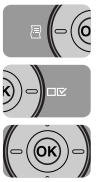
### 3 Select USER MAIN. using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].




The item for USER MAIN. is displayed.



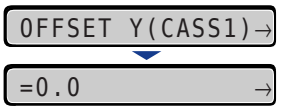
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

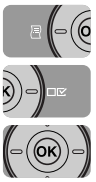


## 4 Select ADJ.START POS. using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

The item for the printing position is displayed.

## 5 Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

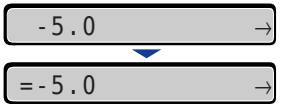


## 6 Specify the target numeric value using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

Check the printout results of the Printing Position Adjustment Print and select the numerical value to adjust the position.

Each time you press [ ► ], the value increases in + 0.1 mm increments, and each time you press [ ◄ ], the value decreases in - 0.1 mm increments. If you keep holding down [ ► ] or [ ◄ ], the speed of the value changing is increased.




"=" is displayed on the left of the value, and the printing position is specified.

## 7 Press the ⊷ (Online) key to place the printer online.

## 8 Press the (Utility) key.

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 9 Select PRNTPOSNPRINT using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

The printing position adjustment print in which the setting is changed is printed. Check the printout results to confirm the printing position.

To make further adjustment, repeat Step 1 to 9.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Cleaning the Outside of the Printer

Periodically clean the outer surfaces and ventilation slots of the printer to maintain the optimal printing quality. When cleaning the printer, be careful of the following points in order to prevent an electrical shock or printer malfunctions.

**WARNING**

- **When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the main power switch, and then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.**
- **Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.**

IMPORTANT

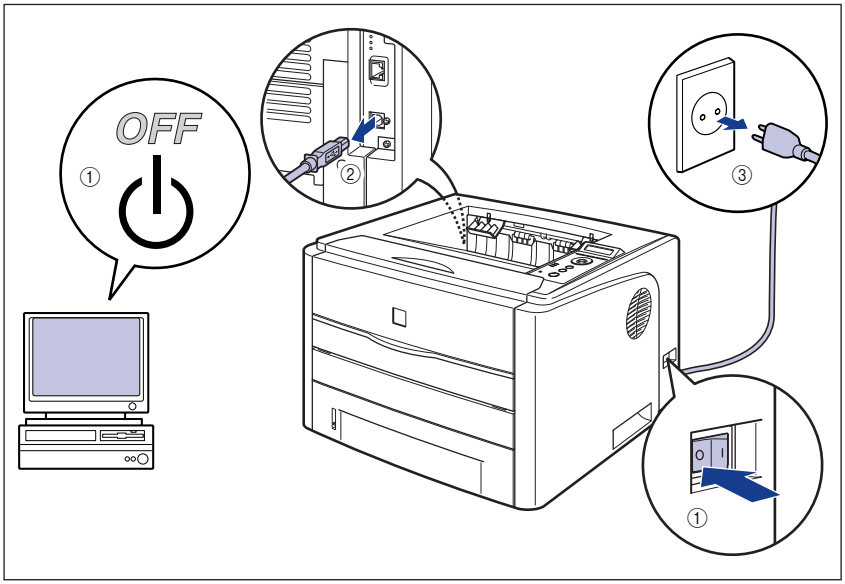
- Be careful not to use a cleaning agent other than water or a mild detergent diluted with water, as this may deform or crack the plastic materials in the printer.
- When using a mild detergent, be sure to dilute it with water.
- Grease or oil does not have to be applied to this printer. Be sure not to apply grease or oil.





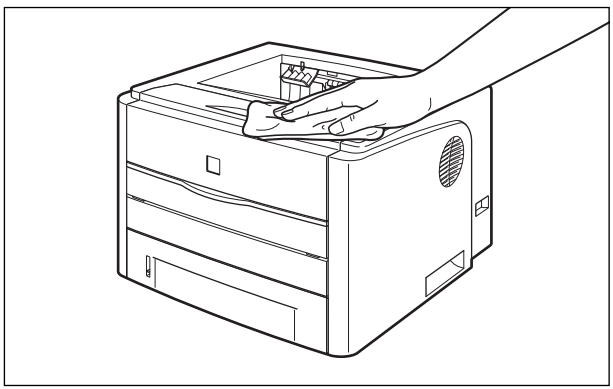
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**1** **Turn the printer and computer OFF ①, remove the USB cable ②, and then disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet ③.**




**2** **Firmly wring a soft cloth dampened with water or a mild detergent diluted with water, and wipe off the dirt.**

If you use a mild detergent for cleaning, be sure to wipe away the detergent with a soft cloth dampened with water.







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**3** After wiping off the dirt, wipe the printer with a dry cloth.

**4** When the printer is completely dry, plug the power plug into the AC power outlet, and then connect the USB cable.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Moving the Printer

When changing the location of the printer or moving the printer for maintenance, be sure to perform the following procedure.

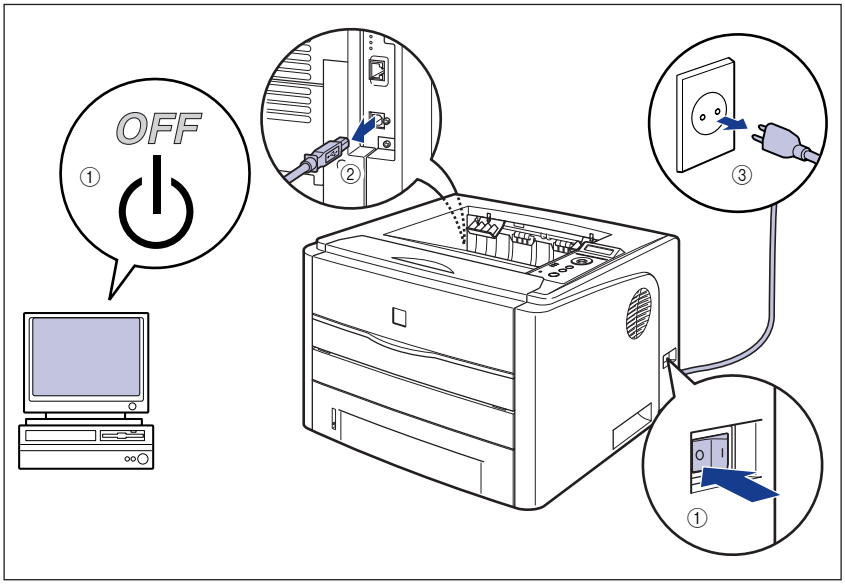
IMPORTANT

Make sure that the front cover and manual feed slot cover are closed before carrying the printer.

NOTE

For details on the installation site, see "Environments," on p. 2-3.

**1 Turn the printer and computer OFF ①, remove the USB cable ②, and then disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet ③.**




**WARNING**

**Be sure to turn the printer and computer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**

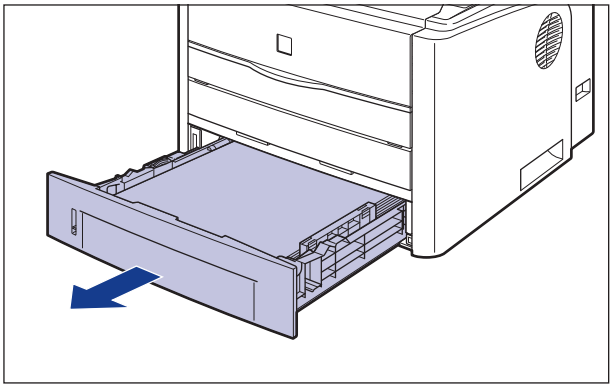




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**2** **Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.**

**3** **Pull out the paper cassette.**



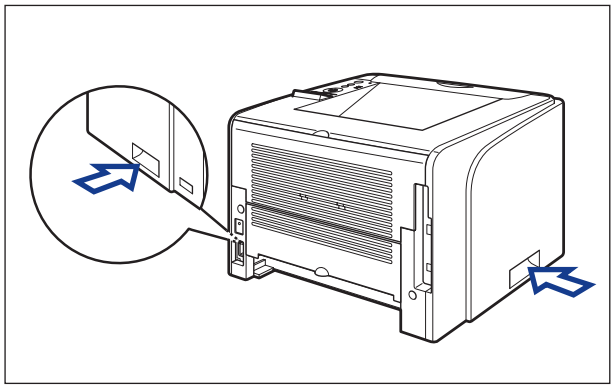


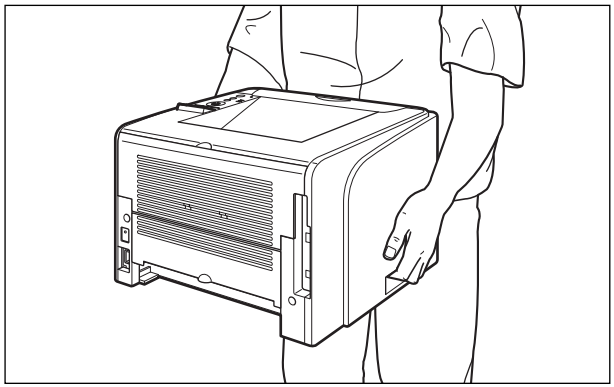


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 4 Move the printer unit from the installation site.

From the front side, securely hold the printer by the lift handles located on the lower portion of the printer with both hands.





**CAUTION**

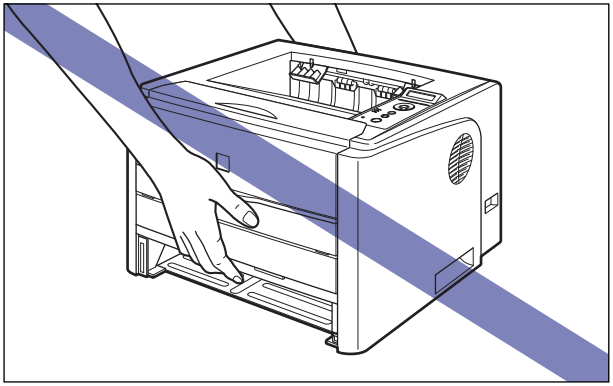
- **This printer weighs approximately 11.8 kg without the paper cassette installed. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.**

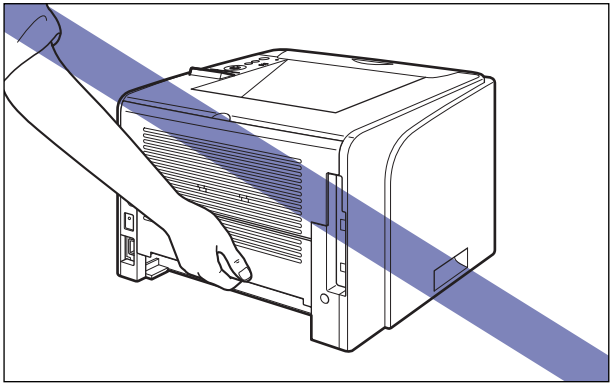




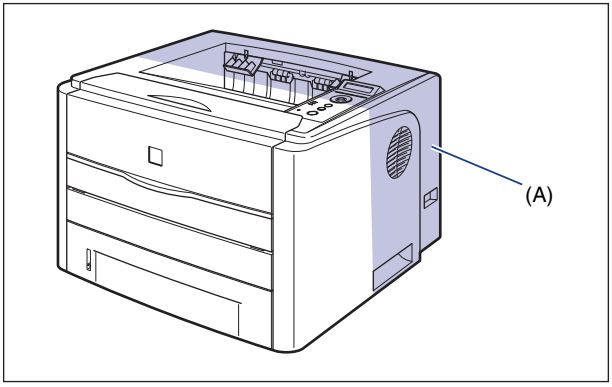
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Be sure not to hold the printer by the front portion, back portion, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**





- **The back portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to get off-balanced when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**



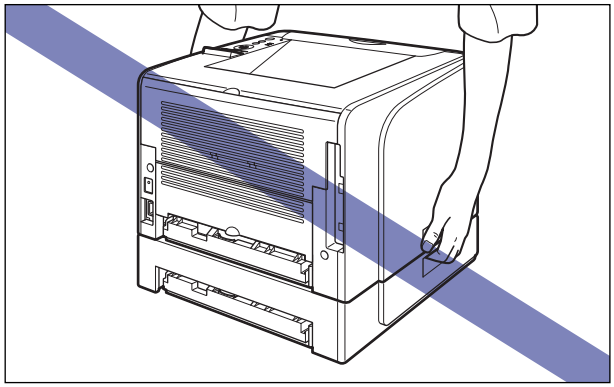

- **Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.**





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed. If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.**



NOTE

If the optional paper feeder was previously installed in the printer, place the paper feeder on the new installation site before carrying the printer to the site. For details on the procedure for installing the paper feeder, see "Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-9.

## 5 Put the printer down carefully at the new installation site.

**CAUTION**

**Put the printer down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.**

IMPORTANT

Secure sufficient space around the printer at the installation site so that you can install the optional accessories and connect cables.

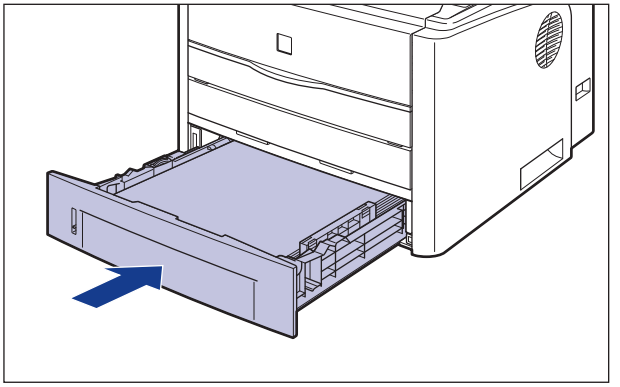




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 6 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**

## 7 Connect the interface cables except for the USB cable, and connect the power cord.

## 8 Connect the USB cable.

### ● Transporting the Printer

When transporting the printer for reasons such as relocating, remove the toner cartridge and store the printer and the parts in the package that they came in with the packing materials attached in order to prevent them from being damaged while being transported.
If the original package and packing materials are not available, find an appropriate box and packing materials and pack the printer and the parts appropriately.





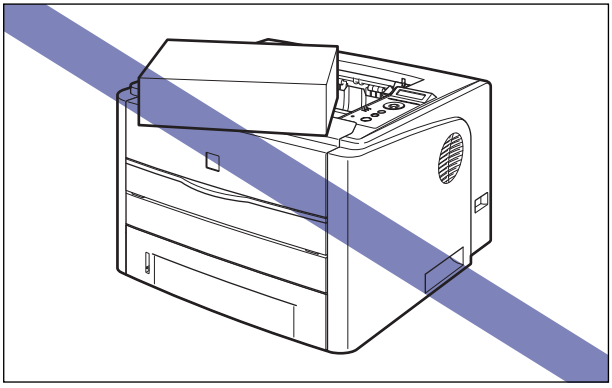
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Handling the Printer

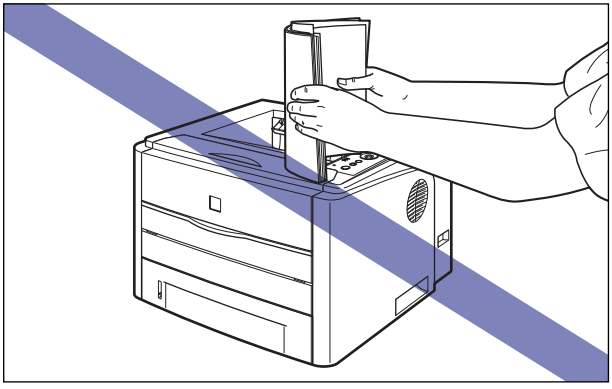
This printer consists of various electronic and precise optical parts. Read the following section so that you can handle the printer properly.

IMPORTANT

- For details on how to handle the printer, also read "Important Safety Instructions" (See p. xvi).
- Do not place any heavy objects on the printer, trays, or covers. This may result in damage to the printer.



- Do not leave the front cover open longer than required. Exposing the printer to direct sunlight or strong light may result in deterioration in print quality.
- Avoid vibration while the printer is printing. This may result in deterioration in print quality.



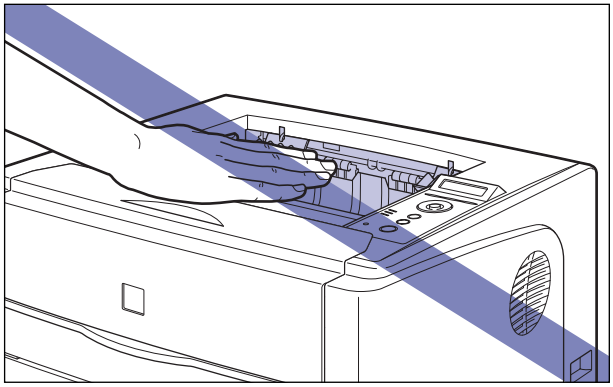
- Be sure not to open the covers on the printer during printing. This may result in damage to the printer.

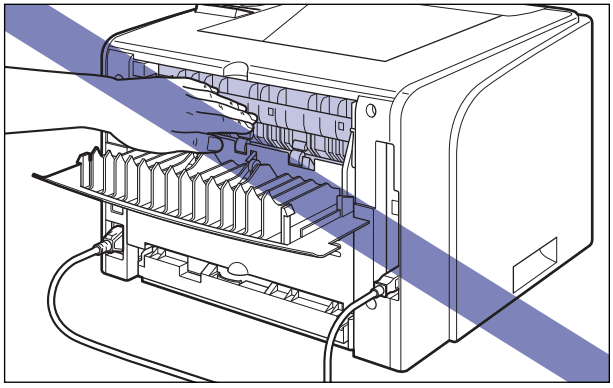




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- Handle the front cover and manual feed slot cover gently when opening or closing them. Failure to do so may result in damage to the printer.
- If you want to spread a blanket on the printer to prevent dust from entering the printer, turn the power OFF and allow the printer to cool down sufficiently before covering the printer.
- If you do not plan to use the printer for a long period of time, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
- Do not use or store the printer in a room where chemicals are used.
- The surroundings of the face-down output tray and face-up output slot are hot during printing or immediately after printing. When taking out of the paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to touch the surroundings of the face-down output tray or face-up output slot.









Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# 1

CHAPTER

# Before Using the Printer

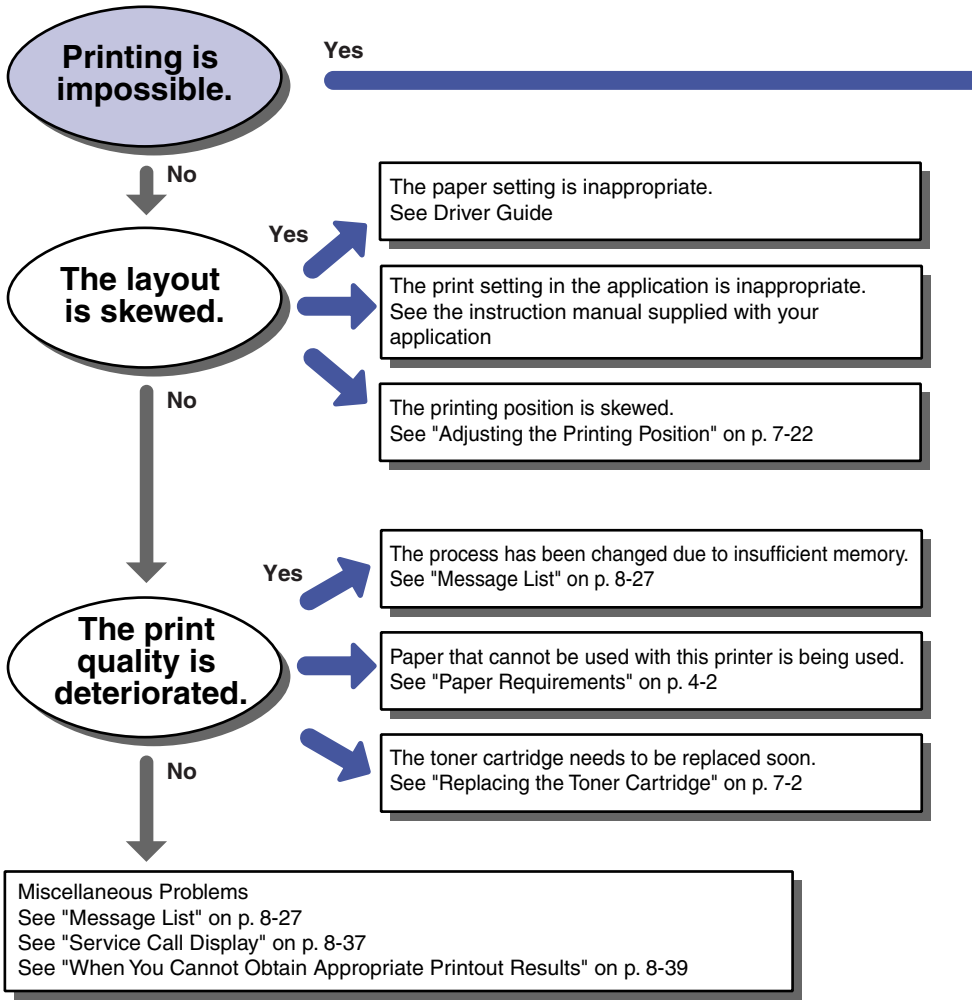
This chapter describes the [illegible] and how to view the display.


Features and Benefits . . . . . 1-2
User Manual CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-4
System Requirements . . . . . 1-4
Using the CD-ROM Menu . . . . . 1-5
Parts and Their Functions . . . . . 1-6
Printer . . . . . 1-6
Control Panel Keys . . . . . 1-7
Display . . . . . 1-8
Optional Accessories . . . . . 1-12
Paper Feeder . . . . . 1-12




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

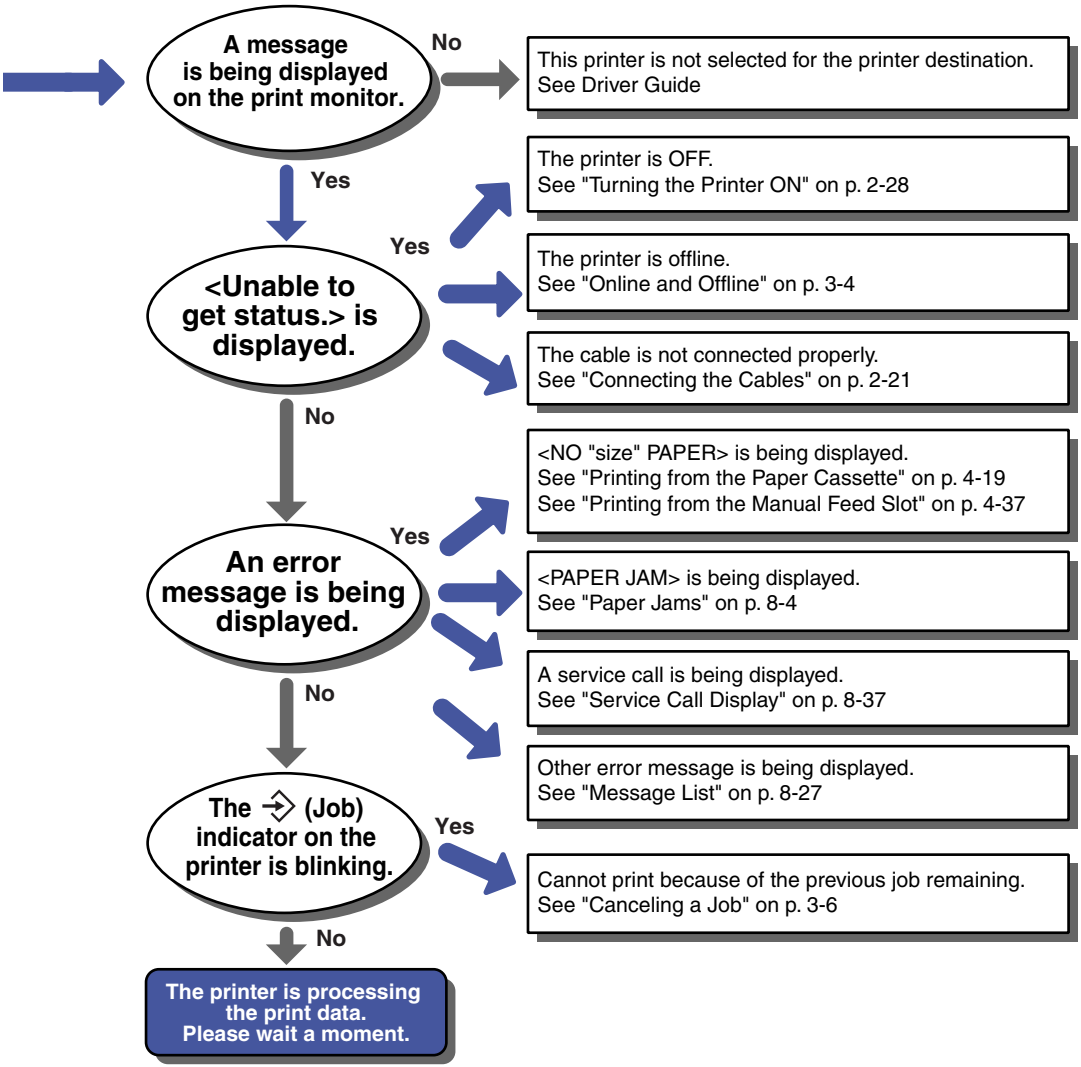
# When You Have Trouble Printing


Printing is impossible.
Yes
No
The layout is skewed.
Yes
The paper setting is inappropriate.
See Driver Guide
The print setting in the application is inappropriate.
See the instruction manual supplied with your application
No
The printing position is skewed.
See "Adjusting the Printing Position" on p. 7-22
The print quality is deteriorated.
Yes
The process has been changed due to insufficient memory.
See "Message List" on p. 8-27
Paper that cannot be used with this printer is being used.
See "Paper Requirements" on p. 4-2
The toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon.
See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge" on p. 7-2
No
Miscellaneous Problems
See "Message List" on p. 8-27
See "Service Call Display" on p. 8-37
See "When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results" on p. 8-39





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals


A message is being displayed on the print monitor.
No
This printer is not selected for the printer destination.
See Driver Guide
Yes
<Unable to get status.> is displayed.
Yes
The printer is OFF.
See "Turning the Printer ON" on p. 2-28
The printer is offline.
See "Online and Offline" on p. 3-4
The cable is not connected properly.
See "Connecting the Cables" on p. 2-21
No
An error message is being displayed.
Yes
<NO "size" PAPER> is being displayed.
See "Printing from the Paper Cassette" on p. 4-19
See "Printing from the Manual Feed Slot" on p. 4-37
<PAPER JAM> is being displayed.
See "Paper Jams" on p. 8-4
A service call is being displayed.
See "Service Call Display" on p. 8-37
No
The (Job) indicator on the printer is blinking.
Yes
Other error message is being displayed.
See "Message List" on p. 8-27
Cannot print because of the previous job remaining.
See "Canceling a Job" on p. 3-6
No
The printer is processing the print data.
Please wait a moment.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Paper Jams

When a paper jam occurs, confirm the messages first, then remove the paper following the procedure.

**WARNING**

**There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.**

**CAUTION**

- **The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer are hot during use. Make sure the fixing unit is completely cool before removing the jammed paper. Touching the fixing unit when it is still hot may result in burns.**
- **When removing jammed paper, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.**
- **When removing paper jammed inside the printer, remove the jammed paper gently to prevent the toner on the paper from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.**
- **When removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.**
- **Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area after removing jammed paper completely. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.**

IMPORTANT

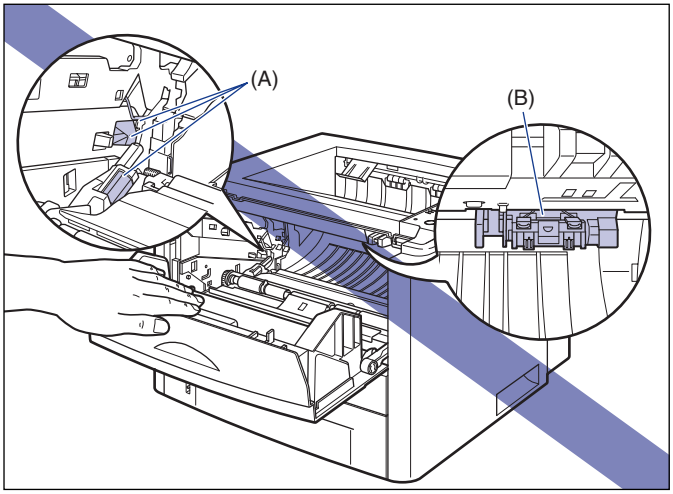
- Remove jammed paper while the power of the printer is ON. If the power is turned OFF, the data being printed will be deleted.
- Applying excess force may result in tearing paper or damaging the parts in the printer. When removing jammed paper, pull out the paper in the most appropriate direction, judging from the position of the paper.
- If paper is torn, be sure to find and remove any remaining pieces of paper.
- The error message may remain if jammed paper is removed without opening the front cover. In this case, open and close the front cover once.



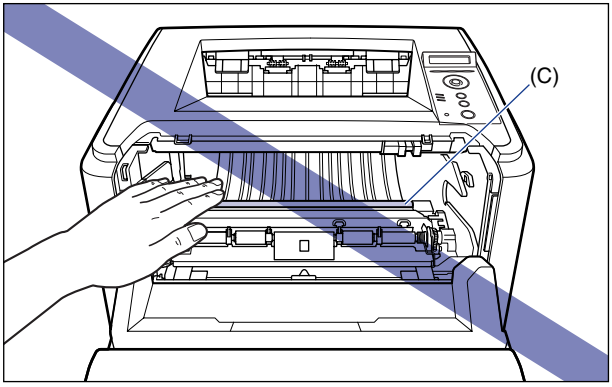


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

• Be sure not to touch the high-voltage contacts (A) or electrical contact (B) shown in the figure, as this may result in damage to the printer.




• Be sure not to touch the transfer roller (C). This may result in deterioration in print quality.

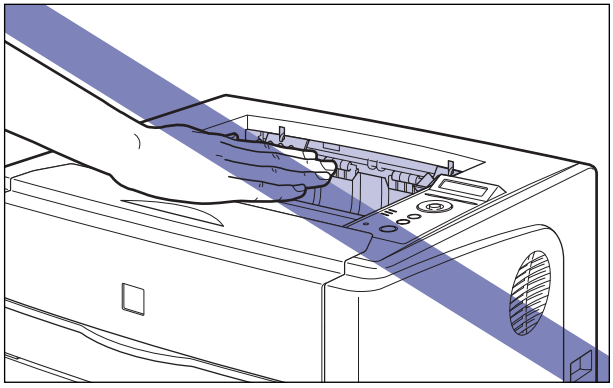


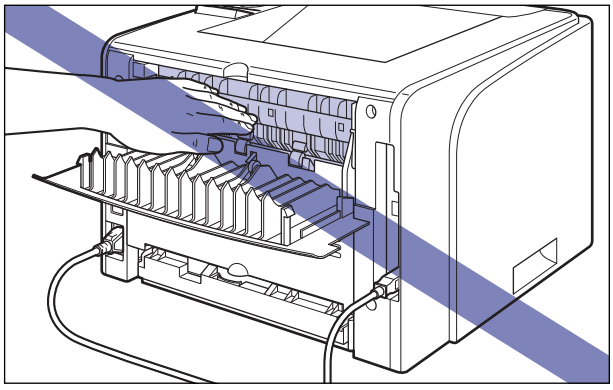





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- The surroundings of the face-down output tray and face-up output slot are hot during printing or immediately after printing. When taking out of the paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to touch the surroundings of the face-down output tray or face-up output slot.





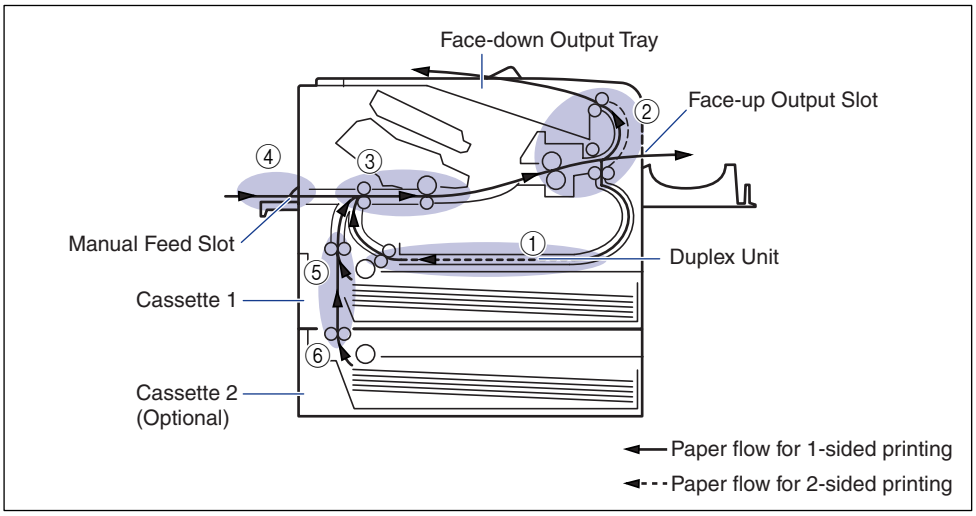




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Paper Jam Location

The message that appears in the display shows the location where the paper jam occurred.




| Paper Jam Location | | Displayed Message |
|---|---|---|
| ① | Duplex print transport area | <DUPLEX UNIT> |
| ② | Face-up output slot | <S-OUTPUT AREA> |
| ③ | Inside the front cover | <FRONT COVER> |
| ④ | Manual feed slot | <MF SLOT AREA> |
| ⑤ | Cassette 1 | <CASS.1 AREA> |
| ⑥ | Cassette 2 (Only when the paper feeder is installed) | <CASS.2 AREA> |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

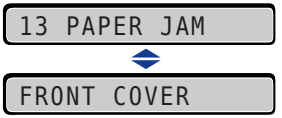
# Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams

Remove the jammed paper using the following procedure.

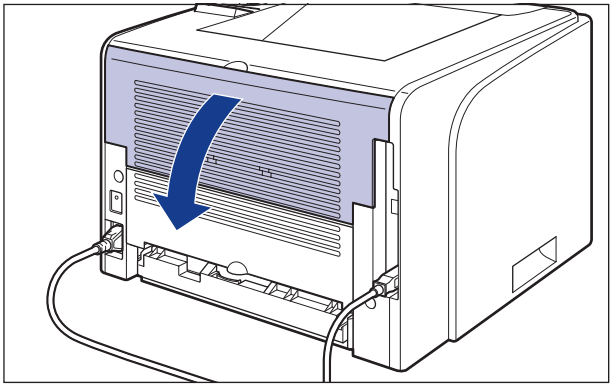
## 1 Confirm all the messages that appear in the display.

Messages appear one at a time. Confirm all of them.

As the messages disappear when the cover is open, take a note of them if required.




## 2 Open the output selection cover.

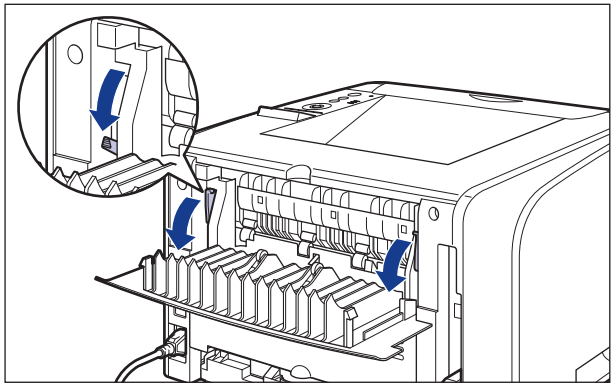






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

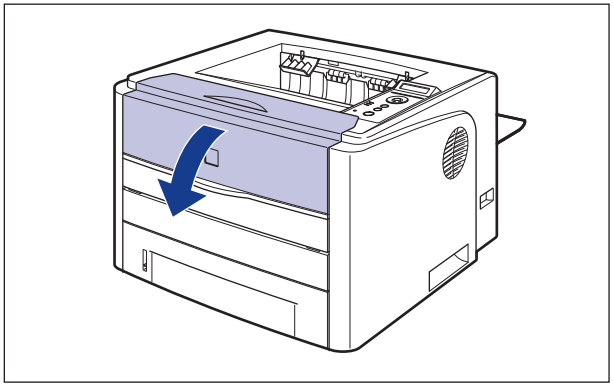
## 3 Tilt the green pressure release levers on both sides of the fixing unit towards you to release the pressure in the fixing unit.



Even if paper is jammed here, do not remove it but proceed to the next step.

## 4 Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.

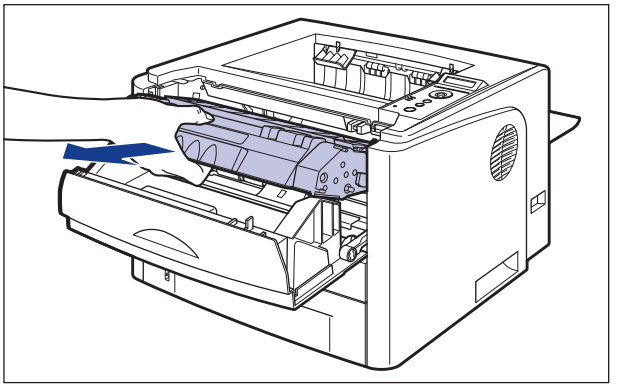






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 5 Remove the toner cartridge from the printer.



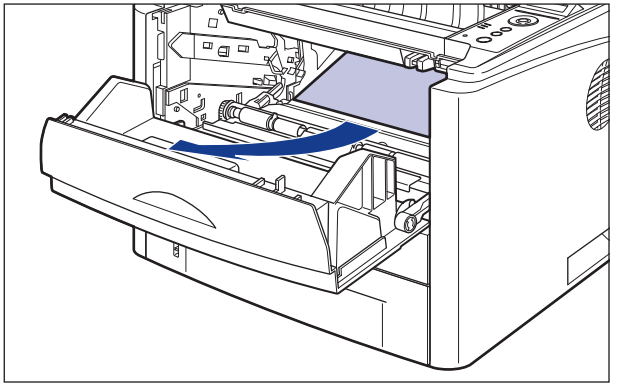
NOTE

For details on handling toner cartridges, see "Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-14.

## 6 Place the toner cartridge into the protective bag.

## 7 If you see the top of the jammed paper inside the front cover, simply pull out the paper to remove it.

Remove the jammed paper gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling.



IMPORTANT

If you pull the jammed paper obliquely upward, unfixed toner may spill. When removing the jammed paper, pull it as horizontally as possible. Dirt inside the printer may cause deterioration in print quality.

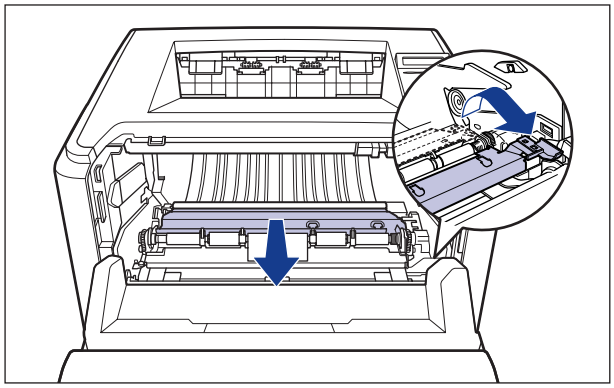




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 8 Raise the transport guide, then tilt it toward you.

Holding the green tab, raise the transport guide, then tilt it toward you.



**CAUTION**

**Do not take your hands off the transport guide. The transport guide may snap back to its original position, and this may result in personal injury.**

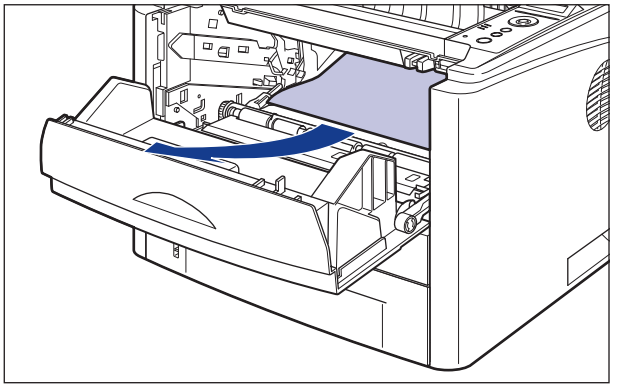


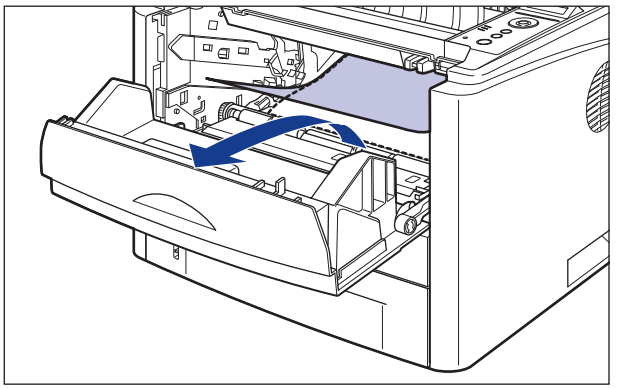


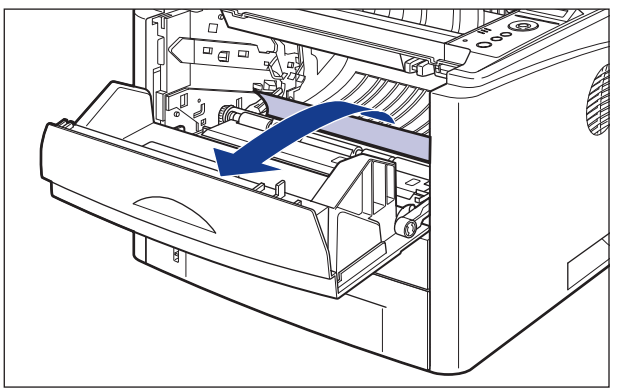
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 9 Remove any jammed paper by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

Remove the jammed paper gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling.









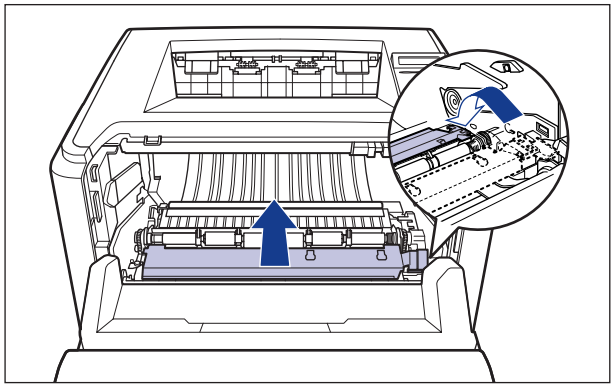


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.

## 10 Gently move the transport guide back to its original position.



**CAUTION**

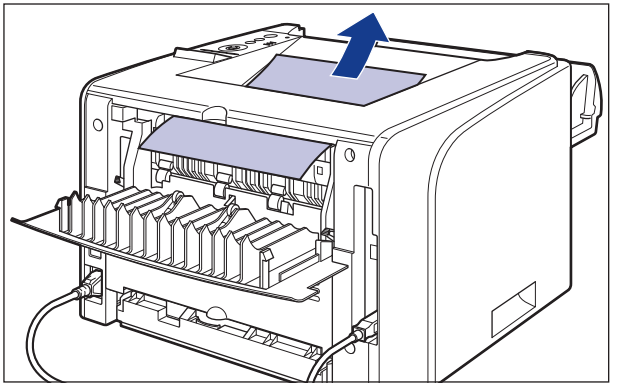
**Do not take your hands off the transport guide until the transport guide moves back to its original position. The transport guide may snap back to its original position, and this may result in personal injury.**

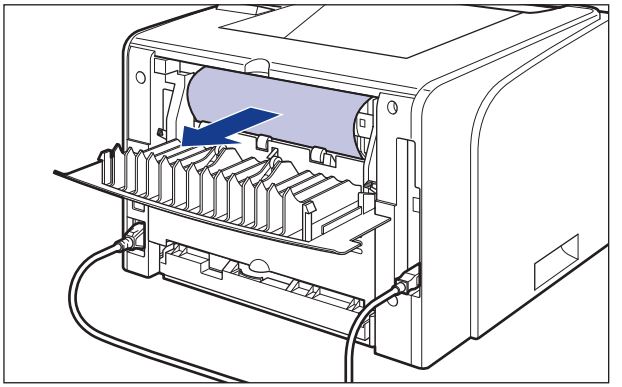


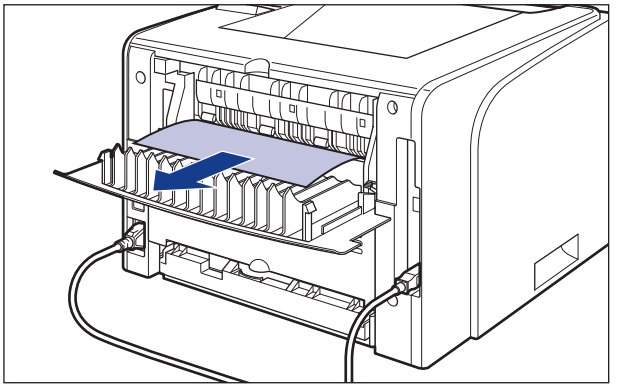


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**11** **Remove any jammed paper on the face-down output tray or face-up output slot side by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.**





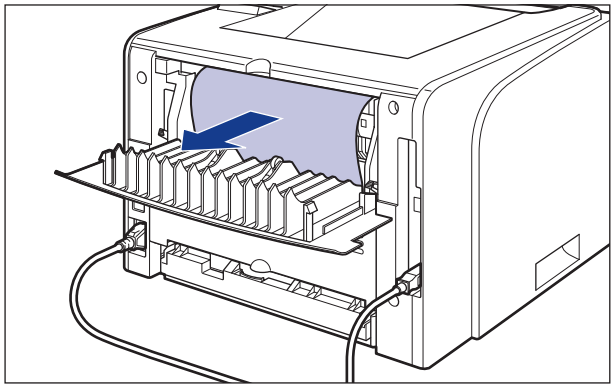




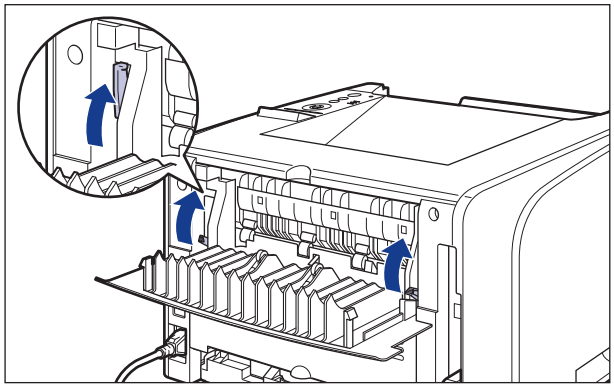


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

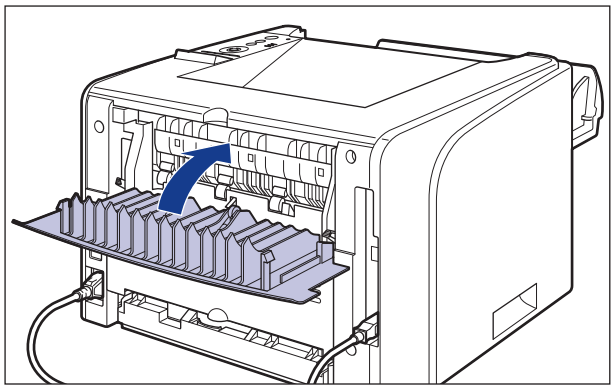
When you have been performing automatic 2-sided printing



**12** **Move the green pressure release levers of the fixing unit back to their original positions.**



**13** **Close the output selection cover.**



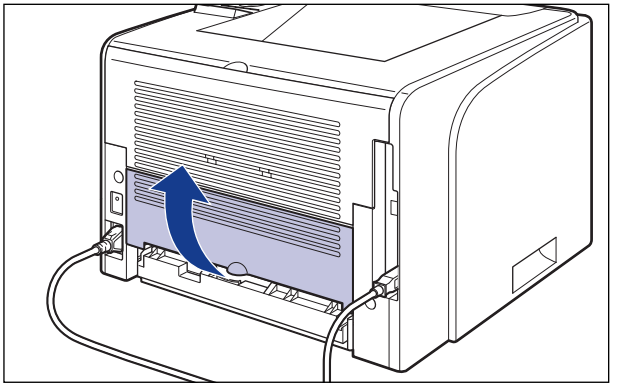




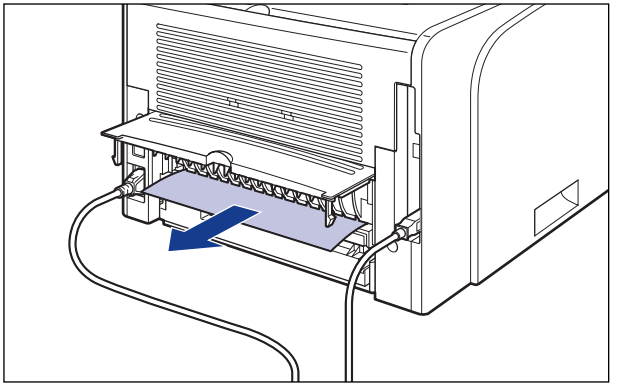
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If you have not been performing automatic 2-sided printing, proceed to Step 17.

## 14 Open the duplex unit cover.



## 15 Remove any jammed paper by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.



IMPORTANT

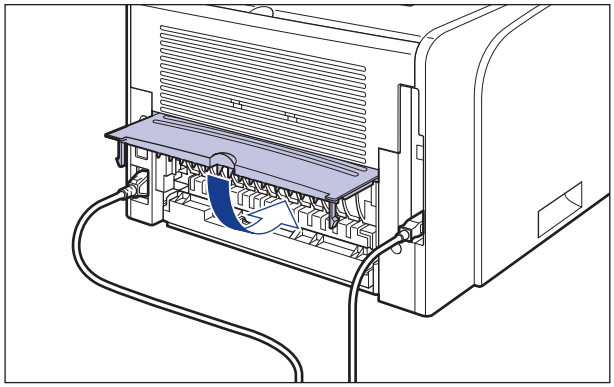
If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.





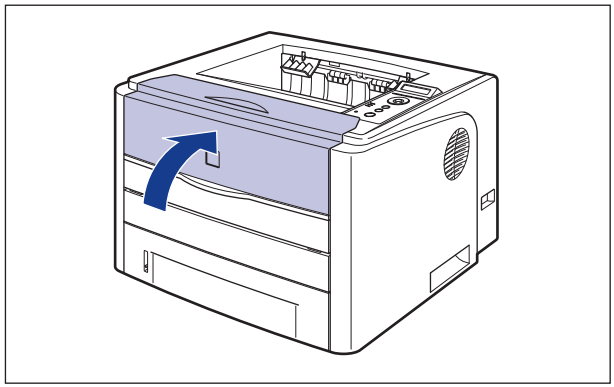
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 16 Close the duplex unit cover.



## 17 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.

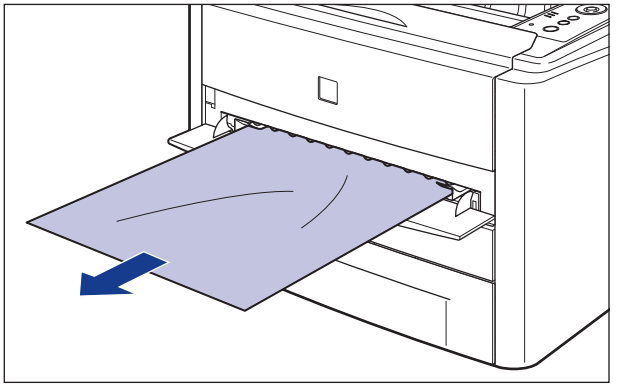




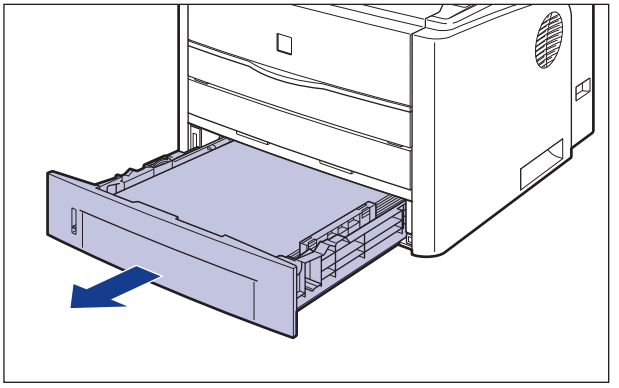


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**18** **If you are using the manual feed slot, remove any paper jammed in the manual feed slot.**



**19** **Pull out the paper cassette.**

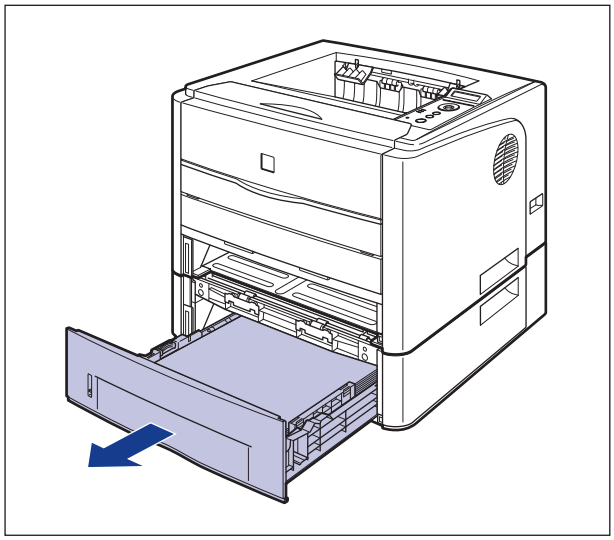






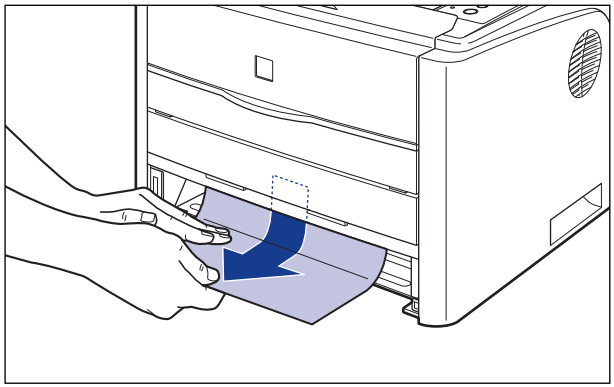
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If the paper feeder is installed, pull out the paper cassette of the paper feeder also.



## 20 Remove any jammed paper while pushing it downward to some extent.

In case of the printer unit

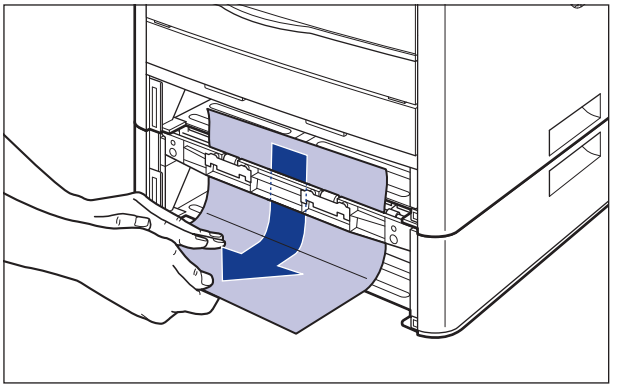






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

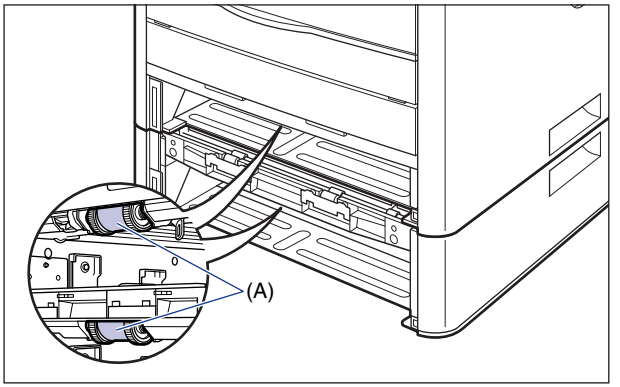
In case of the paper feeder



If you have not been performing 2-sided printing, proceed to Step 24.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the feed rollers (A) in the printer unit and paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or printer error.



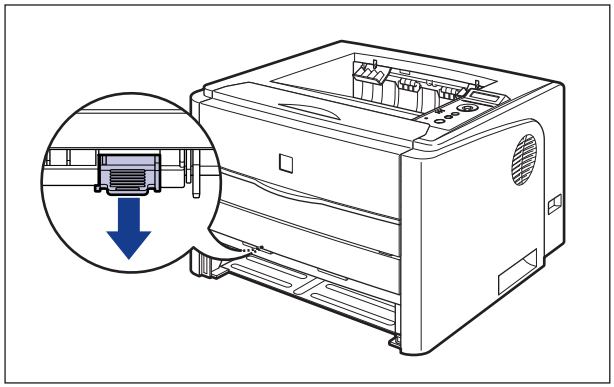


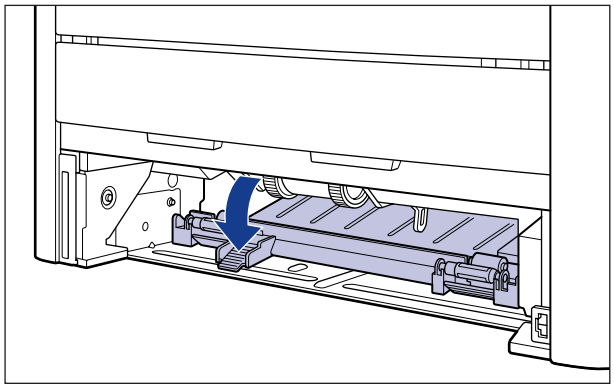



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

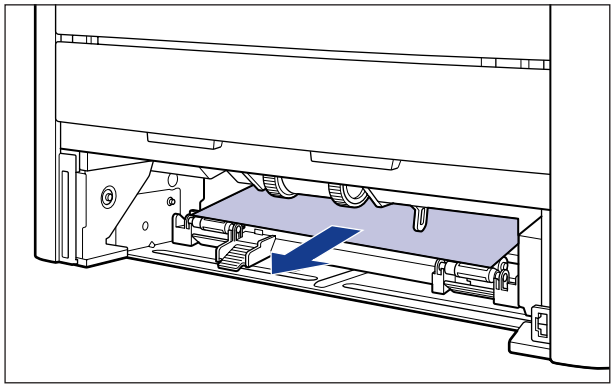
## 21 Open the duplex print transport guide.

Holding the green tab, push the duplex print transport guide downward.





## 22 Remove any jammed paper by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.



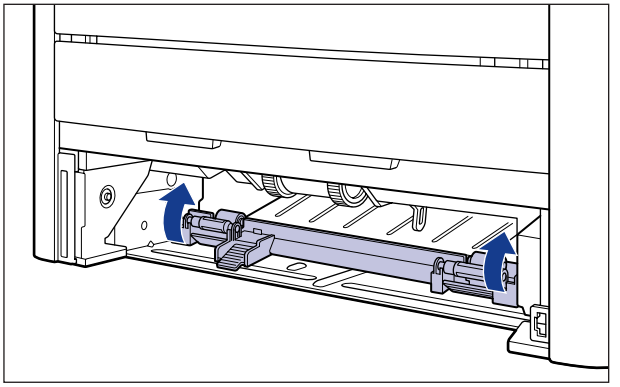




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 23 Close the duplex print transport guide.

Holding the green tab, close both sides of the duplex print transport guide securely.

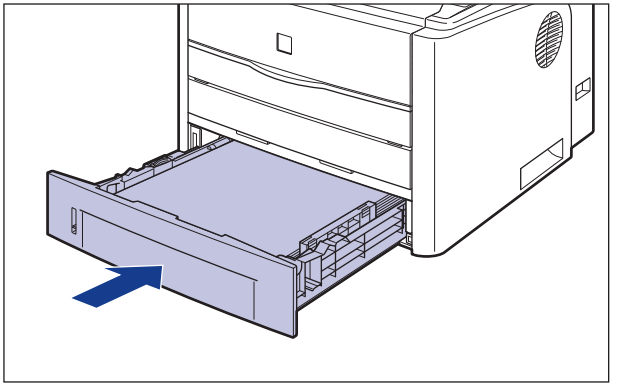


IMPORTANT

Make sure that the duplex print transport guide is closed completely. If the duplex print transport guide is not closed completely, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.

## 24 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.

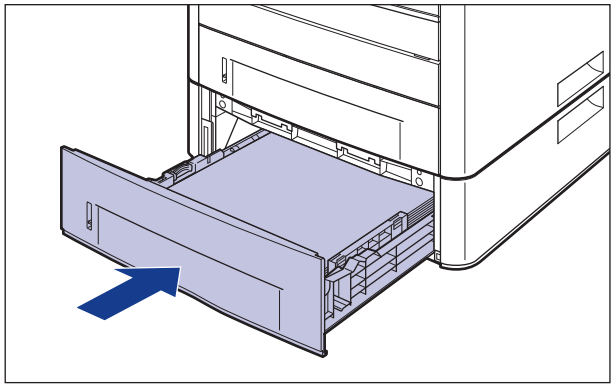






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

If the paper feeder is installed, set the paper cassette of the paper feeder also.

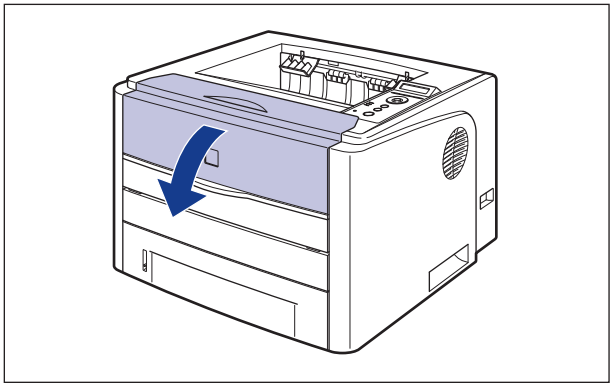


**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**

## 25 Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.



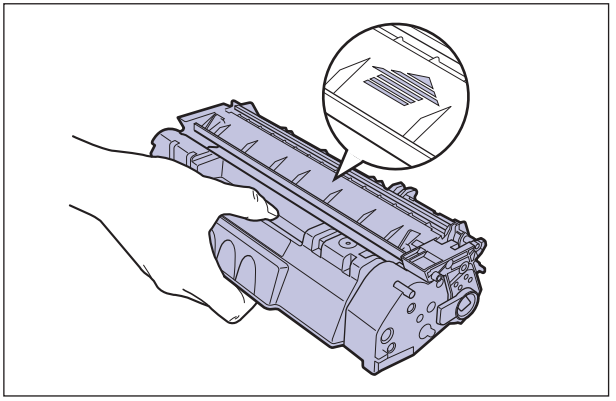
## 26 Take the toner cartridge out of the protective bag.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**27** **Hold the toner cartridge properly with the arrowed side facing up as shown in the figure.**

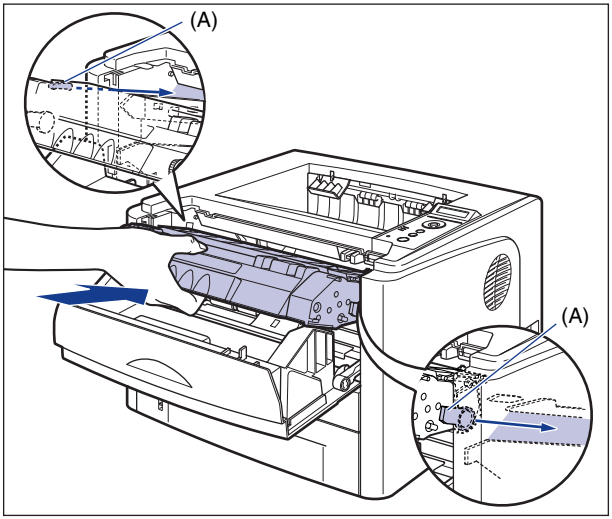


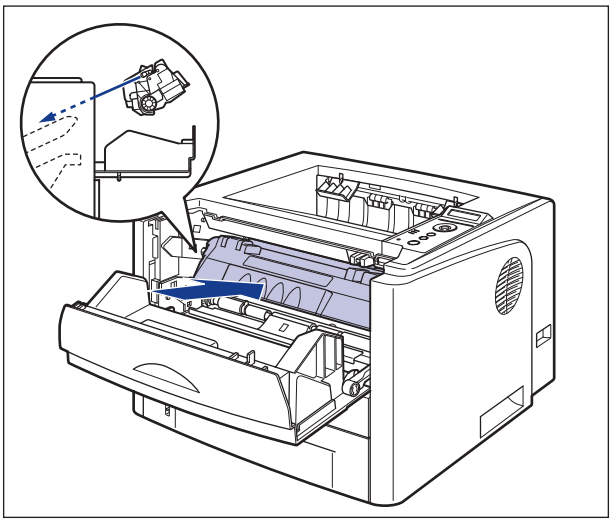




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**28** **Push the toner cartridge into the printer until it touches the back of the printer while aligning (A) on both sides of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer.**



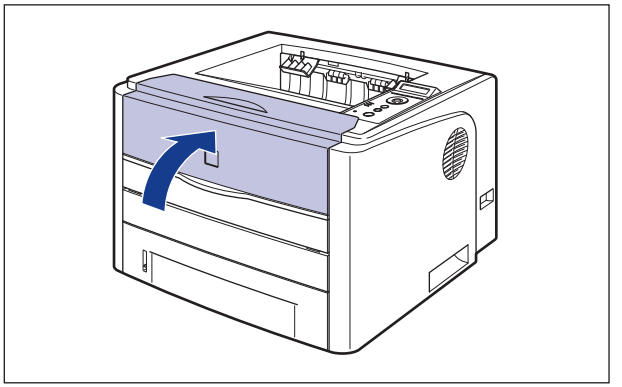




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 29 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.



IMPORTANT

- If you cannot close the front cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the front cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer or toner cartridge.
- Do not leave the front cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Message List

When the printer cannot continue printing for some reason (an error status), the printer beeps, the ⚠ (Message) indicator comes on, and an error message that indicates the description of the error appears in the display. A Warning message appears in the display when the printer requires some remedy (a warning status) although the job is not affected.

If either of these messages appears, perform the following procedures according to the message.

NOTE

- When multiple warnings are occurring at the same time, the Warning messages appear by rotation.
- When the printer is in error status and warning status at the same time, the Warning message does not appear.
- Even when a message with (Warning Message) appears (when the printer is in a warning status), the printer does not stop printing.
- For a message with the <Auto Error Skip> mark, you can skip the error by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key and continue printing. However, part of the print data may be missing or it may not be printed properly. When you want to stop the process, perform a soft reset to eliminate the cause of the error, press the ⊷ (Online) key, and then print again. Also, you can automatically skip the errors to which this mark is attached by setting AUTO ERROR SKIP in the SETUP menu to ON.

<E nnn-nnnn> ("n" represents a number)

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | A problem has occurred inside the printer. |
| Remedy | Solve the problem following the instructions in "Service Call Display" (See p. 8-37). |

<00 NO SLOT LOAD>

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | Because the printer is in the middle of printing, it forbids loading paper in the manual feed slot. |
| Remedy | When loading paper in the manual feed slot, wait until printing and printer operation finish completely. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**IMPORTANT**

Make sure that the printer is not operating and the ◯ (Ready) indicator is on when loading paper in the manual feed slot. When printing multiple copies or multiple pages from the manual feed slot, make sure that the printer is not operating and the ⚠ (Message) indicator is on before loading the second and subsequent paper. If paper is loaded in the manual feed slot while the printer is operating such as when the printer is printing or immediately after outputting paper, the loaded paper may be output without being printed, or this may result in paper jams.

<OF OPT.CONN.ERR.>

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause 1 | The optional paper feeder is not installed properly. |
| Remedy | Turn the power OFF, install the paper feeder properly, and then turn it ON again. |
| Cause 2 | The optional paper feeder is installed or removed when the printer is ON. |
| Remedy | Turn the power OFF, install or remove the paper feeder, then turn the printer ON again. |
| Cause 3 | The connector of the optional paper feeder is disconnected. |
| Remedy | Turn the printer OFF, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. |
| Cause 4 | A paper feeder that is not for this printer is installed. |
| Remedy | Turn the power OFF, install the paper feeder for this printer, and then turn it ON again. |

<11 NO "size" PAPER>

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | Paper of the size specified in the application is not loaded in the paper source (in all the paper sources when PAPER SOURCE is set to AUTO; in the specified paper source when the setting is fixed). |
| Remedy 1 | Refill or load paper. |
| Remedy 2 | Press the (Feeder Selection) key, then select other paper source for the same paper size or larger paper size. (See "Selecting a Paper Source," on p. 4-12) |

<12 COVER OPEN>

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | The front cover is open. |
| Remedy | Close the front cover firmly. If the printer is not online, press the ⊷ (Online) key. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<13 PAPER JAM>

**Cause** Paper is jammed inside the printer

**Remedy** Remove the jammed paper and set the paper cassette and covers to the original position. If the printer is not online, press the ⊷ (Online) key. (See "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4)

**IMPORTANT**

- If paper jams have occurred at multiple areas at the same time, the areas appear in the display by rotation.
- If you have removed the jammed paper without opening any cover, be sure to open and close the front cover once, and then press the ⊷ (Online) key.

<14 NO TONER CART>

**Cause** The toner cartridge is not installed or installed improperly.

**Remedy** Install the toner cartridge properly. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

<18 FEED ERROR>

**Cause** Paper of the size or type that cannot be fed from the manual feed slot or paper cassette is specified.

**Remedy 1** If a paper source is specified, press the (Feeder Selection) key, then set PAPER SOURCE to AUTO.

**Remedy 2** Press the (Feeder Selection) key, select a paper source from which paper of the specified size or type can be fed, then load paper.

**Remedy 3** Specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE and STD PAPER TYPE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu to the size or type of paper that can be loaded in the paper source.

**Remedy 4** Press the ⊷ (Online) key, then print from the currently selected paper source. However, this may result in deterioration in print quality.

<18 CHK MANU SLOT>

**Cause** Paper is loaded in the manual feed slot.

**Remedy 1** If you want to use the paper loaded in the manual feed slot for printing, press the (Feeder Selection) key, and then set PAPER SOURCE to MANU.FEED SLOT.

**Remedy 2** Remove any paper loaded in the manual feed slot.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<1H CHK TNR CONN.> (Warning Message)

**Cause** There is a possibility that the toner cartridge is not installed properly.

**Remedy 1** Remove the toner cartridge, then reinstall it properly.

**Remedy 2** If <1H CHK TNR CONN.> appears and there is a problem with the print quality even after applying the Remedy 1, remove the toner cartridge and replace it with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

<23 DOWN.MEM.FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The memory for registering macro and custom characters has run out and overflowed.

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the •—• (Online) key. However, the overflowed data cannot be registered.

**Remedy 2** Perform a soft reset using the RESET menu, increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure, register the data again, and then print again.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory will be deleted).

<26 SYS.MEM.FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The work memory required for the printer process has run out while the system is processing the data (mainly the graphics data and text data).

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the •—• (Online) key. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.

**Remedy 2** Perform a soft reset using the RESET menu, and then increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory will be deleted).

<27 JOB START ERR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The specified emulation does not exist.

**Remedy** Press the •—• (Online) key to continue printing from the next data. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<30 MEMORY FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The work memory has run out while the system is processing the data.

**Remedy** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the data with which an error has occurred may not be printed properly.

<32 2-SIDED ERROR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The printer received 2-sided printing data of paper sizes (including the orientation) or paper types unavailable for automatic 2-sided printing.

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the data on each side is printed on two pages.

**Remedy 2** After performing a soft reset in the RESET menu, change the setting to a paper size or type available for automatic 2-sided printing, and then print again.

<33 WORK MEM.FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The work memory for each operation mode cannot be secured.

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.

**IMPORTANT**

When you continue printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key, be aware that the data of macro that is already registered may be deleted.

**Remedy 2** Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure, and then print again.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory that the printer has received will be deleted).

<35 TABLE FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The number of the documents in a job has exceeded 16.

**Remedy** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the job with which an error has occurred is not printed.

<38 LOW IMGE QLTY> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The printer cannot process the data because it is too complicated.

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the printer prints with the image quality level being lowered.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, set GRADATION LEVEL (See p. 6-23) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to STANDARD, and then print again.

<39 SPL MEM.FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

Cause Because spool memory has run out, the printer cannot print.

Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing the •—• (Online) key. However, the page with which an error has occurred is not printed.

Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, specify the paper size smaller, and then print again.

Remedy 3 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, set GRADATION LEVEL (See p. 6-23) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to STANDARD, and then print again.

Remedy 4 If 2-SIDED PRINT. in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu is set to ON, specify OFF, and then print again.

Remedy 5 Change the setting for HALFTONES (See p. 6-24) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu, and then print again.

<41 CHK PAPER SZE>

Cause 1 The size of the paper loaded in the manual feed slot or paper cassette is different from the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE specified from the computer or control panel.

Remedy Match the size specified in SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE and the size of the loaded paper, and then press the •—• (Online) key.

Cause 2 You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less and printed when SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu was set to MIXED SIZE.

Remedy Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again.

Cause 3 SPECIAL MODE J in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu is set to OFF.

Remedy Set SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-31) to ON, then print again.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<52 RAST.MODE ERR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The printer received data in format that it does not support during printing in the Raster mode.

**Remedy 1** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the data may not be printed properly.

**Remedy 2** Print again using a printer driver that supports image data formats.

<53 SEC.PRINT ERR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** Secured print data is sent from a printer driver that is not for LBP3360.

**Remedy** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to cancel the job.

<53 STORE ERROR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The data for which a stored job print is specified is sent from a printer driver that is not for LBP3360.

**Remedy** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to cancel the job.

<58 JOB MEM.FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** There is not sufficient free RAM space to process jobs.

**Remedy 1** If you are processing multiple jobs at once, press the ⊷ (Online) key to cancel printing, wait for other jobs complete, and then print again.

**Remedy 2** If the job data is too large, divide the job and print again.

<59 JOB RX ERROR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** The printer received any unanalyzable data while it is receiving a job, or it timed out.

**Remedy 1** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to cancel printing, then print again.

**Remedy 2** A problem may be occurring in the network you are using. Check the status of the network that your are using.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<A4 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<A5 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<A7 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<D7 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<D8 LAYOUT ERROR>

**Cause** The page cannot be laid out because the memory has run out.

**Remedy 1** Set [Graphics Mode] in UFR II Printer Driver to [Raster Mode], then print again. (See Help of UFR II Printer Driver)

**Remedy 2** After performing a soft reset using the RESET menu, perform a hard reset to increase the free memory space or cycle the power of the printer, and then print again. (Be aware that all the data in the memory that the printer has received will be deleted.)

**Remedy 3** Perform "Error Skip", then continue printing. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<D8 VERSION ERROR>

**Cause** You tried to print from a printer driver that is not for LBP3360.

**Remedy** Print from the printer driver for LBP3360.

<D8 SYNTAX ERROR>

**Cause** Invalid data is sent when printing using UFR II Printer Driver.

**Remedy 1** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to continue printing from the next data. However, the page with which an error has occurred and its subsequent pages are not printed.

**Remedy 2** Confirm the data to be printed, then print again.

<D8 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<F9-nn PWR OFF>ON> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

**Cause** A problem has occurred while the printer is processing print data.

**Remedy** Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<FF FONT FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** Because of too many fonts to be registered, the field (font table) for registering font information has run out and overflowed.

**Remedy** The printer continues printing by pressing the ⊷ (Online) key. However, the page with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.

<FM SIZE ERROR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** There is some font with its size exceeds the pseudo-scalable font size.

**Remedy** Perform "Error Skip", then continue printing. However, the characters with which an error has occurred are not printed properly.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<FM SCALE ERROR> <Auto Error Skip>

**Cause** There is a character in which the number of coordinate points on the contour lines exceeds the limitation of a pseudo-scalable font.

**Remedy** Perform "Error Skip", then continue printing. However, the characters with which an error has occurred are not printed properly.

<PC LOAD "size">

**Cause** The paper of the size specified in the application is not loaded in the paper cassette or manual feed slot, or the paper source for the different paper size is selected.

**Remedy 1** Load the paper of the size selected in the application (or the one specified by scaling factors). (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19)

**Remedy 2** If you are using the manual feed slot, check SLOT PAPER SIZE, and when the paper size does not match the size specified in the application, specify the setting properly. (See "Printing from the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-37)

**Remedy 3** Press the (Feeder Selection) key, then select the paper cassette in which the paper of the matched size is loaded. (See "Selecting a Paper Source," on p. 4-12)

**Remedy 4** Press the (Online) key, then print to the currently loaded paper forcibly. If you are using the manual feed slot, the setting for SLOT PAPER SIZE automatically changes to the setting specified in the application.

**IMPORTANT**

If you open the front cover when the message <PC LOAD "size"> is displayed, the message may disappear. However, be sure to follow the directions in the displayed message to change the paper.





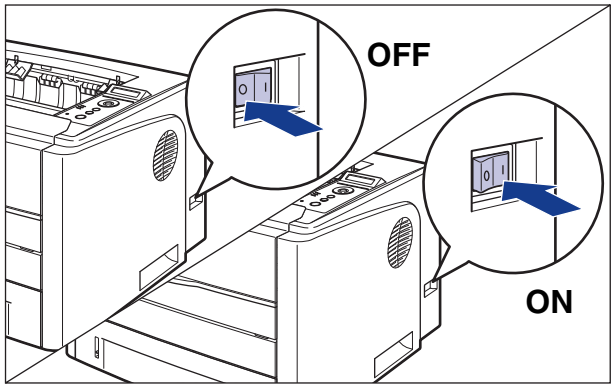
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Service Call Display

When a problem has occurred and the printer does not work properly, the service call shown in the figure appears:

| Message | Cause | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Ennn-nnnn<br>("n" represents a number) | A problem has occurred inside the printer. | Cycle the power of the printer using the following procedure. If the message does not disappear after cycling the power of the printer several times, contact your local authorized Canon dealer. |
| E001-nnnn<br>E003-nnnn<br>("n" represents a number) | A problem has occurred with the fixing unit of the printer. | Perform the following procedures from the Step 2 to contact your local authorized Canon dealer. |
| F9-nn PWR OFF>ON<br>("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters) | A problem has occurred while the printer is processing print data. | Cycle the power of the printer using the following procedure. |

**1** **Turn the power OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn it ON again.**




If the message does not reappear, the printer can be used as normal. If the error message still appears, proceed to the next step.

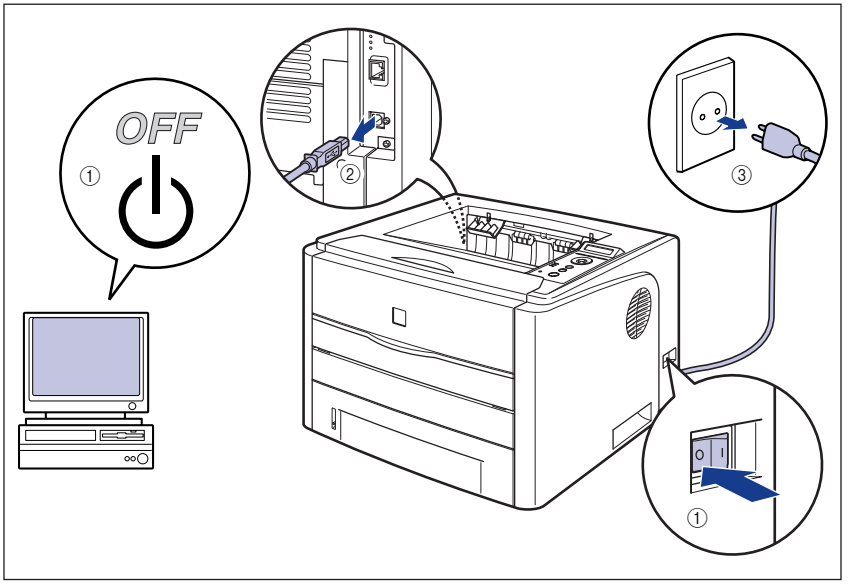




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**2** **Note down the alphanumeric characters and message in the display.**

**3** **Turn the printer OFF ①, remove the USB cable ②, and then disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet ③.**




**4** **Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.**

When contacting your Canon dealer, please report the problems and code number that you have noted.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results

If any problem occurs while you are using the printer, take the following measures depending on the symptoms.

**IMPORTANT**

- If the printer does not operate properly or an error message appears, see "Message List," on p. 8-27 and "Service Call Display," on p. 8-37.
- When a paper jam occurs, see "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4.
- If a symptom that is not indicated in this section occurs, if none of the indicated remedies do not solve the problem, or if you cannot determine the problem, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

## Problems with the Power or Printer Operation

### The printer cannot be turned ON.

**Cause 1** The power plug is unplugged from the AC power outlet.

**Remedy** Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

**Cause 2** The printer is plugged to an extension cord or multiple power strip.

**Remedy** Plug the power plug of the printer directly into the AC power outlet on the wall.

**Cause 3** The breakers have tripped.

**Remedy** Reset the breakers on the switch board.

**Cause 4** There is a break in the power cord.

**Remedy** If the printer is turned ON after replacing the power cord with the one that is of the same type and is used for other device, there is a break in the power cord. In this case, purchase a new power cord and replace it with the broken one.

### The printer does not operate.

**Cause 1** The printer is offline.

**Remedy** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to turn on the ⊷ (Online) indicator. (See "Online and Offline," on p. 3-4)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**Cause 2** There is data remaining in the memory (the (Job) indicator is on).

**Remedy** Press the (Online) key to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu to output all the data remaining in the memory. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-6)

**Cause 3** The interface cable is disconnected.

**Remedy** Connect the interface cable firmly to the interface connectors on the computer and printer unit. (See "Connecting to a Computer," on p. 2-23)

**Cause 4** This printer or any optional accessory is broken.

**Remedy** Clear the problem referring to the message in the display. (See "Message List," on p. 8-27, "Service Call Display," on p. 8-37)

All the indicators on the print server are off.

**Cause 1** The LAN cable is not connected properly or broken.

**Remedy 1** Remove the LAN cable once, then connect it again.

**Remedy 2** Replace the LAN cable with another one, then connect it.

**Cause 2** The cable is connected to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub.

**Remedy 1** Connect the LAN cable to a port with a "X" mark.

**Remedy 2** If the hub has a UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to "X".

**Cause 3** A cross LAN cable is being used.

**Remedy 1** Replace the cable with a straight LAN cable.

**Remedy 2** Connect the cross LAN cable to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub. If the hub has a UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to "=".

NOTE

A cross LAN cable is a cable used to connect to a printer and computer directly.

**Cause 4** Cannot communicate with the hub.

**Remedy 1** Make sure that the power of the hub is on.

**Remedy 2** Set network transmission setting for the print server according to the transmission speed of the connected hub. (See "ETHERNET DRIVER," on p. 6-29)

**Remedy 3** Replace the hub.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**Cause 5** The hardware of the print server is in an abnormal condition.

**Remedy** Report the problems to your local authorized Canon dealer.

### The printer stopped printing during a job.

**Cause** There is data remaining in the memory (the ⇨ (Job) indicator is on).

**Remedy** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET to output all the data remaining in the memory. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-6)

### The indicators on the control panel do not come on.

**Cause 1** The printer is not ON.

**Remedy** Turn the printer ON.

**Cause 2** The printer is in Power Save Mode.

**Remedy** The printer will be ready to print after you send print data or press any key on the control panel.

### The keys on the control panel do not function.

**Cause** There is data remaining in the memory (the ⇨ (Job) indicator is on).

**Remedy** Press the ⊷ (Online) key to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-6)

### A paper jam occurs each time you print.

**Cause 1** The amount of the paper loaded in the paper cassette exceeds the load limitation.

**Remedy** Reduce the amount of paper to within the load limitation and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19)

**IMPORTANT**

The manual feed slot can be loaded with only one sheet of paper.

**Cause 2** Paper is not loaded properly in the paper cassette or manual feed slot.

**Remedy** Load the paper properly and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19, "Printing from the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-37)

**Cause 3** Unusable paper is loaded in the paper cassette or manual feed slot.

**Remedy** Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause 4 | You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less and printed when SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu was set to MIXED SIZE. |
| Remedy | Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again. |
| Cause 5 | When UFR II Printer Driver was not used, non-standard size paper was loaded in the landscape orientation to print. |
| Remedy | Load the paper in portrait orientation, then print again. |
| Cause 6 | There is still jammed paper inside the printer. |
| Remedy | Remove any jammed paper and print again. (See "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4) |

## Problems with the Printout Results

### Unreadable characters are printed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause 1 | The data is printed from Windows without the supplied printer driver installed for Windows. |
| Remedy | Install the supplied printer driver for Windows, then print again. (See Driver Guide) |
| Cause 2 | The printer setting in the DOS application is not appropriate. |
| Remedy | Specify the printer setting in the DOS application to the one that is compatible with this printer. (See Driver Guide) |

### A blank page cannot be printed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | PAPER SAVE is set to ON. |
| Remedy | When printing a blank page, set PAPER SAVE (p. 6-32, p. 6-37) to OFF. |

### The last page cannot be printed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cause | The command that notifies of the end of the data is not sent from the computer (the ⇨ (Job) indicator is on). |
| Remedy | Press the ⊷ (Online) key to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu (If you print using an application that does not have a printing function, the last page in which data is less than one page remains in the memory). (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-6) |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The data lies outside the paper.

**Cause 1** You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 215.9 mm or less and printed when SLOT PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu was set to MIXED SIZE.

**Remedy** Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again.

**Cause 2** When UFR II Printer Driver was not used, non-standard size paper was loaded in the landscape orientation to print.

**Remedy** Load the paper in portrait orientation, then print again.

**Cause 3** Paper of the size smaller than the data size is loaded.

**Remedy** Load the paper of the size that matches the data size or print the data in the reduced size that matches the paper size. (See Driver Guide)

**Cause 4** The position of the paper is incorrect.

**Remedy** Load the paper properly and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19, "Printing from the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-37)

**Cause 5** A document with no margins was printed.

**Remedy 1** Secure a margin around the data so that it fits within Printable Area (See p. 4-7), then print again.

**Remedy 2** If you select the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in UFR II Printer Driver, the printer prints with its printable area expanded. However, data may be printed with the edges missing.

**Cause 6** The printing position has been adjusted in ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu.

**Remedy** Adjust the printing position to an appropriate value using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. (See "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-22)

The printing position is skewed.

**Cause 1** GUTTER, OFFSET Y, or OFFSET X in the LAYOUT MENU options in the SETUP menu is specified.

**Remedy** Set GUTTER, OFFSET Y, or OFFSET X in the LAYOUT MENU options in the SETUP menu to "0", and then print again.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Cause 2 "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application are not specified properly.

Remedy Specify the settings for "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application properly, and then print again. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

Cause 3 The printing position has been adjusted in ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu.

Remedy Adjust the printing position to an appropriate value using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. (See "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-22)

### The next page is printed from halfway across the previous page.

Cause "Line Spacing" or "Lines/Page" in the application is not specified properly.

Remedy Specify the settings for "Line Spacing" and "Lines/Page" in the application so that data fits in one page, and print again. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

### Data is printed with its size reduced.

Cause The printer is set to reduce the print size.

Remedy Confirm the setting for [Manual Scaling] in the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)

### Paper comes out wrinkled.

Cause 1 Paper is loaded in the paper cassette or manual feed slot at an angle.

Remedy Load the paper in the paper cassette or manual feed slot straight. (See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-21, "Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-38)

Cause 2 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

Remedy Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

### Paper curls.

Cause 1 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

Remedy Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**Cause 2** Paper is inappropriate.

**Remedy** Replace the paper with one that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

**Cause 3** The paper is too thin.

**Remedy** Set [Paper Type] to [Plain Paper L] in the printer driver.
In order to specify the setting for [Paper Type], display the [Paper Source] sheet.

**Cause 4** Paper that curls easily is output to the face-down output tray.

**Remedy** When printing transparencies or envelopes that curl easily, switch an output tray to the face-up output slot. (See "Output Trays," on p. 4-15)

### Nothing is printed on the paper.

**Cause 1** The toner cartridge was installed with the sealing tape still attached.

**Remedy** Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, pull out the sealing tape, and reinstall the toner cartridge. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

**Cause 2** Multiple sheets of paper were fed at a time.

**Remedy** Align the paper stack in the paper cassette properly and load it again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19)

**Cause 3** A problem has occurred inside the printer.

**Remedy 1** If <Ennn-nnnn> is displayed in the display, turn the power OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. This may clear the message.

**Remedy 2** If the message does not disappear even after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local Canon dealer for servicing.

### White dust is attached to the printed transparencies.

**Cause** The transparencies were printed just after another type of paper was printed continuously.

**Remedy** If you print transparencies after printing paper other than transparency continuously, chipped paper may attach to the transparencies when they are output. In this case, wipe and remove the chipped paper with a soft cloth.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

White streaks appear.

**Cause 1** Toner in the toner cartridge is running out.

**Remedy** Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner, and then reinstall the toner cartridge. If this does not solve the problem, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

**Cause 2** The drum in the toner cartridge has deteriorated.

**Remedy** Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

Printed pages have white specks.

**Cause 1** Appropriate paper is not being used.

**Remedy** Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

**Cause 2** Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

**Remedy** Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

**Cause 3** The drum in the toner cartridge has deteriorated.

**Remedy** Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

The overall print result is faint.

**Cause 1** The setting for the toner density is not appropriate.

**Remedy** Adjust DENSITY (See p. 6-24) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu.

**Cause 2** TONER SAVE in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu is set to ON.

**Remedy** Set TONER SAVE (See p. 6-24) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to OFF.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

The overall print result is dark.

**Cause 1** The setting for the toner density is not appropriate.

**Remedy** Adjust DENSITY (See p. 6-24) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu.

**Cause 2** The printer is exposed to direct sunlight or strong light.

**Remedy** Move the printer to a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight or strong light. Alternatively, move the strong light source away from the printer.

The print is uneven.

**Cause 1** Toner in the toner cartridge is running out.

**Remedy** Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner, and then reinstall the toner cartridge. If this does not solve the problem, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

**Cause 2** Paper is too moist or too dry.

**Remedy** Replace the paper with appropriate one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

**Cause 3** The toner cartridge has deteriorated or is damaged.

**Remedy** Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

The front or back of the printed paper has smudge marks

**Cause** The fixing roller is dirty.

**Remedy** Clean the fixing roller. (See "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 7-19)

A portion of a page is not printed.

**Cause 1** The scale factor is incorrect.

**Remedy 1** Clear the [Manual Scaling] check box in the printer driver. If the check box is cleared, the scale factor will be set according to [Page Size] and [Output Size] automatically.
In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], display the [Page Setup] sheet.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Remedy 2 Select the [Manual Scaling] check box in the printer driver, then specify an appropriate scale factor according to the paper size to be used.
In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], display the [Page Setup] sheet.

Cause 2 The position of the paper is incorrect.

Remedy Load the paper properly. (See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-21, "Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Slot," on p. 4-38)

Cause 3 A document with no margins was printed.

Remedy Secure a margin around the data so that it fits within Printable Area (See p. 4-7), then print again.

### The paper is printed completely black.

Cause The drum in the toner cartridge has deteriorated.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 7-2)

### Toner does not fix well.

Cause Paper is inappropriate.

Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

### The back of the printed paper has smudge marks.

Cause The size of the print data was larger than that of the loaded paper.

Remedy Check if the size of the print data matches that of the loaded paper.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Installing the Optional Accessories

9

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the procedures for installing the optional accessories on the printer.


Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-2
Removing the Packing Materials . . . . . 9-2
Moving the Printer . . . . . 9-5
Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-9




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Installing the Paper Feeder

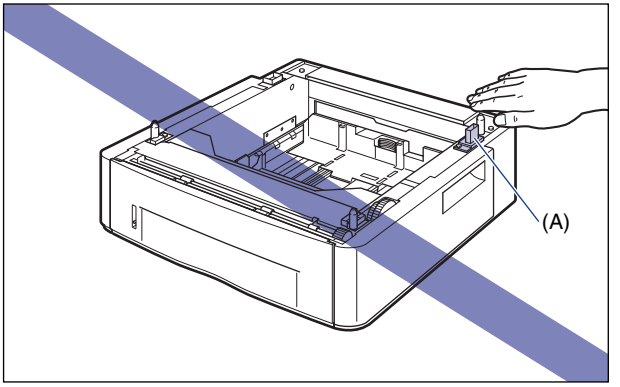
The paper feeder is to be installed at the bottom of the printer unit.

**WARNING**

**Be sure to turn the printer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer before installing the paper feeder. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**

IMPORTANT

- Do not touch the connector (A) in the paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.




- If you are printing from Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is installed before printing. If you print from Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not installed, this will cause paper jams.

## Removing the Packing Materials

The paper feeder is provided with tape and a packing material to be protected from excessive vibrations and shocks during delivery. Remove the tape and packing material before installing the paper feeder on the printer.

IMPORTANT

- If there is any packing material remaining inside the paper feeder, this may result in misfeeds or damage to the printer when operating the printer. Be sure to remove all the packing materials following the procedure.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for relocation or maintenance. Keep them where they will not get lost.



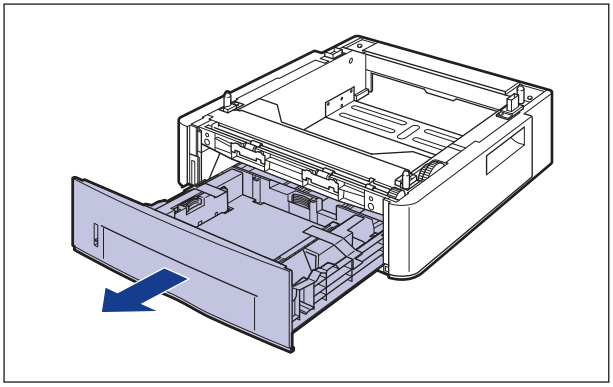


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

NOTE

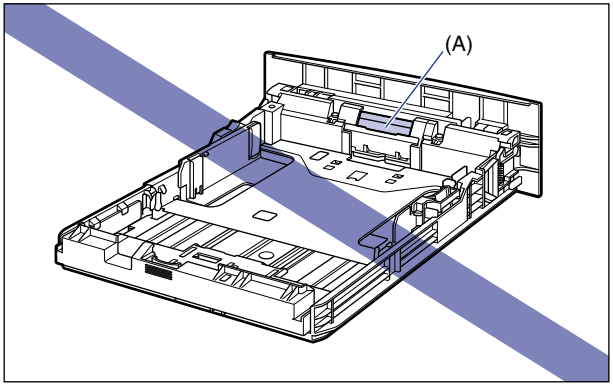
The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

## 1 Pull out the paper cassette.



IMPORTANT

Do not touch the black rubber pad (A) in the paper cassette. This may result in misfeeds.

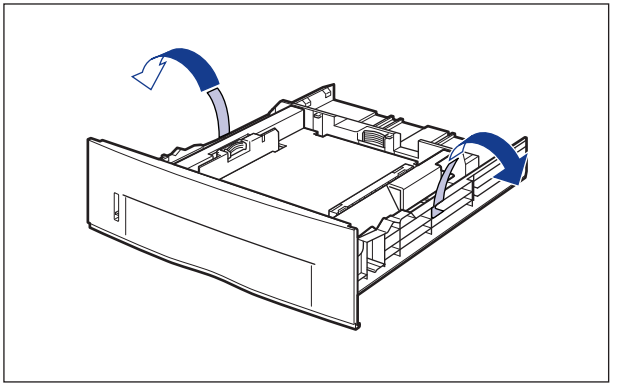




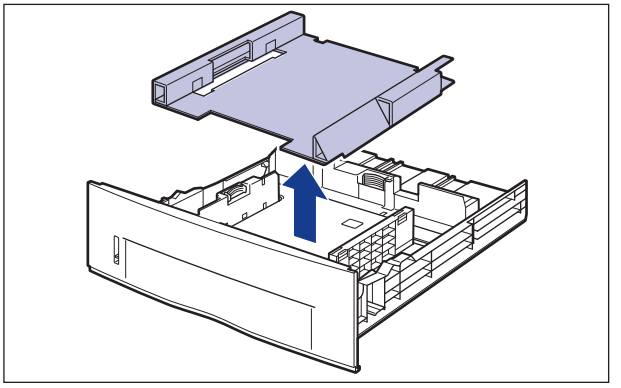



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**2** **Remove the tape that is securing the packing material in the paper cassette (2 locations).**



**3** **Remove the packing material in the paper cassette.**



IMPORTANT

The paper cassette is provided with a packing material. Be sure to take out the paper cassette to remove the packing material.

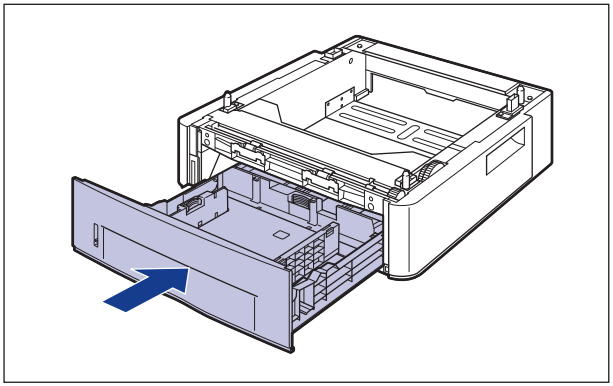




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### 4 Set the paper cassette in the paper feeder.

Push the paper cassette into the paper feeder firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the paper feeder.



**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**

## Moving the Printer

When installing the paper feeder in the printer after installing the printer, move the printer to an appropriate location temporarily using the following procedure.

**WARNING**

**Be sure to turn the printer and computer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.**

**CAUTION**

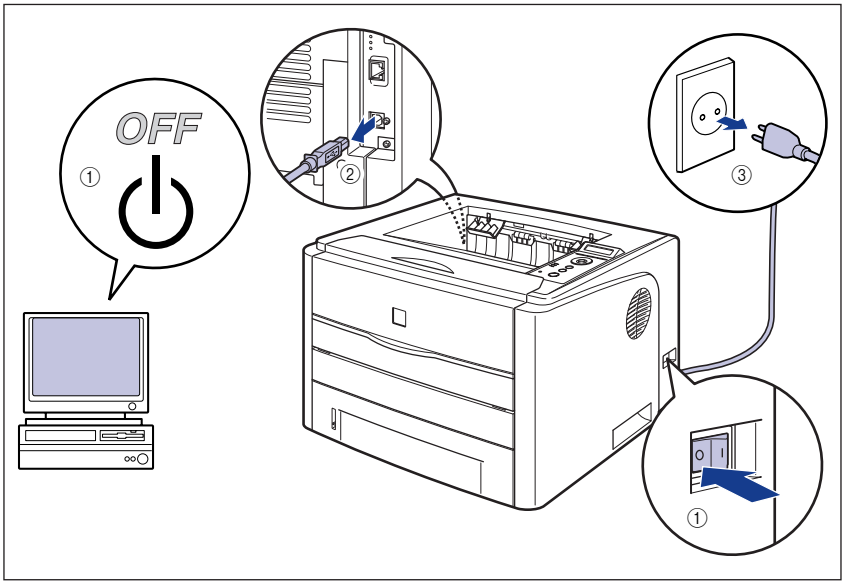
**Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.**





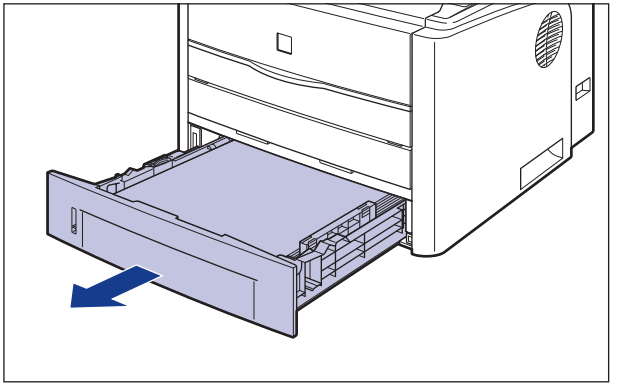
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**1** **Turn the printer and computer OFF ①, remove the USB cable ②, and then disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet ③.**




**2** **Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.**

**3** **Pull out the paper cassette.**



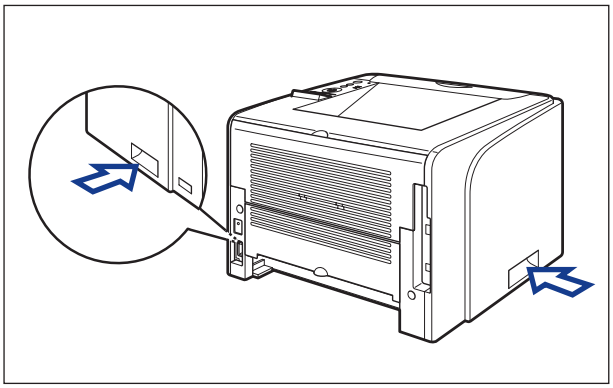


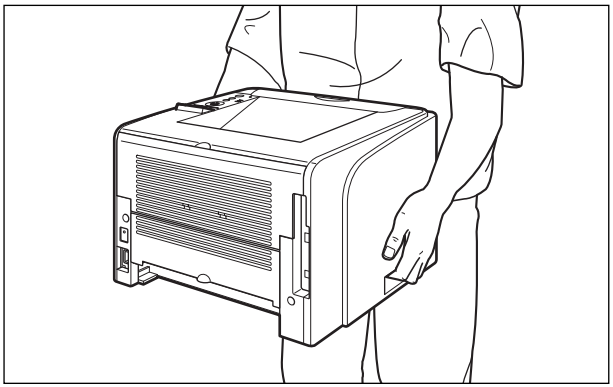


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 4 Move the printer unit from the installation site.

From the front side, securely hold the printer by the lift handles located on the lower portion of the printer with both hands.





**CAUTION**

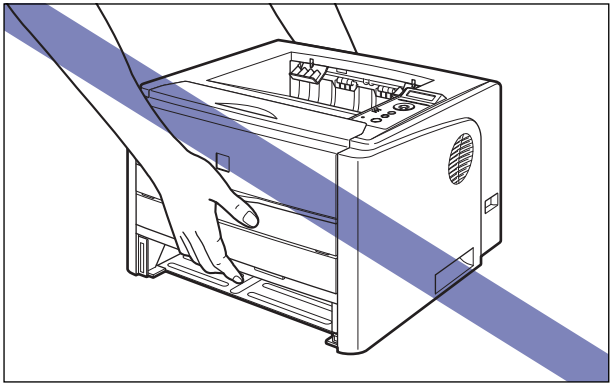
- **This printer weighs approximately 11.8 kg without the paper cassette installed. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.**

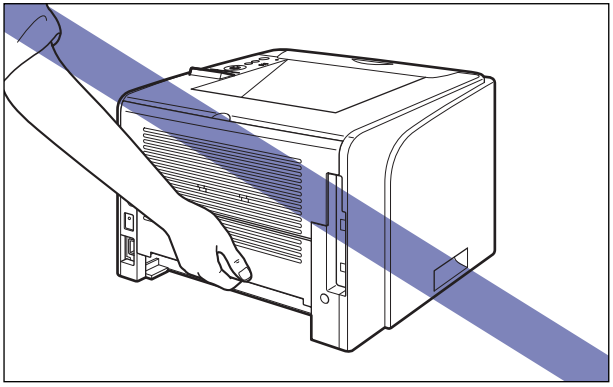




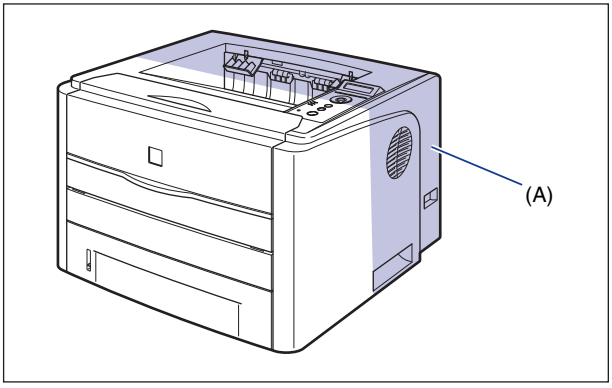
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

- **Be sure not to hold the printer by the front portion, back portion, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**





- **The back portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to get off-balanced when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.**








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

IMPORTANT

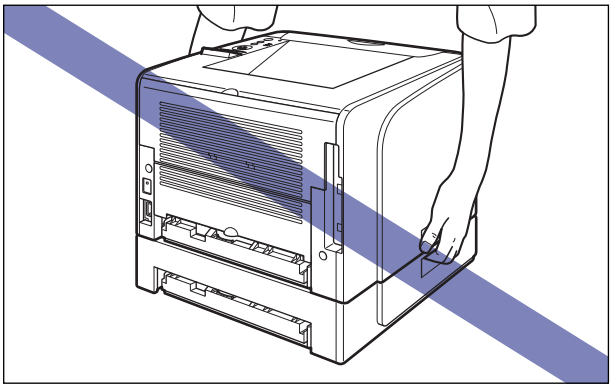
Make sure that the front cover and manual feed slot cover are closed before carrying the printer.

# Installing the Paper Feeder

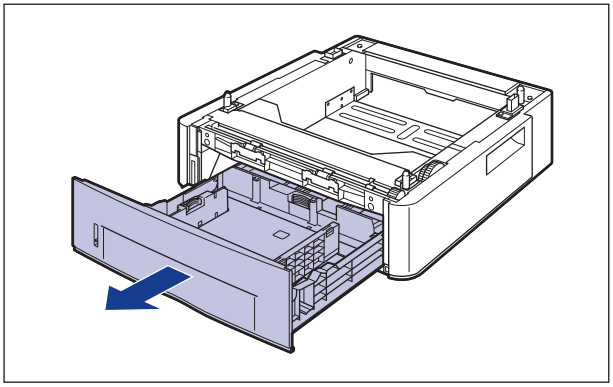
The paper feeder is to be installed at the bottom of the printer unit.

**CAUTION**

- **Put the printer or paper feeder down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.**
- **Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.**
- **Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed. If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.**



## 1 Pull out the paper cassette.



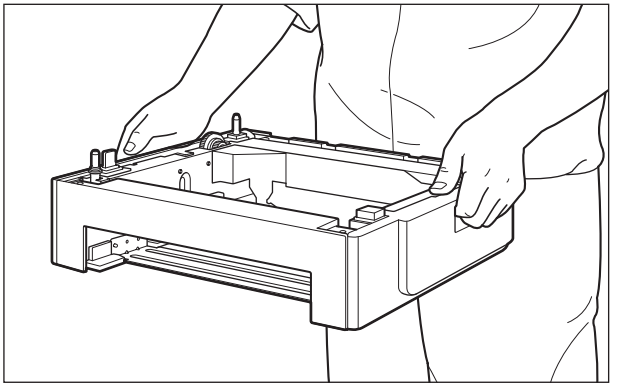




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

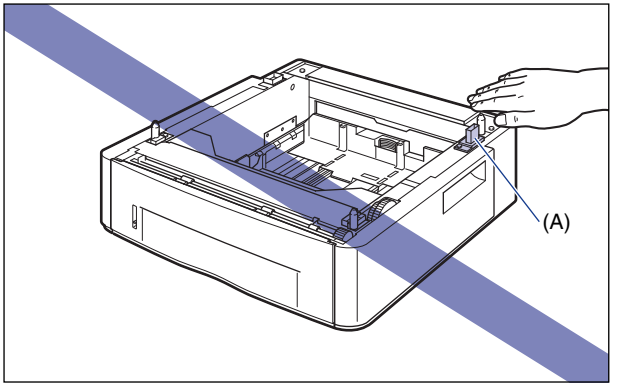
## 2 Place the paper feeder at the installation site.

When carrying the paper feeder, hold the lift handles on both sides with both hands as shown in the figure.



IMPORTANT

- Do not touch the connector (A) in the paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.




- Do not install the paper feeder on a platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or where the printer is liable to sink (such as a carpet or mat).
- Secure sufficient space around the paper feeder so that you can install the printer and connect cords such as the power cord and interface cables.

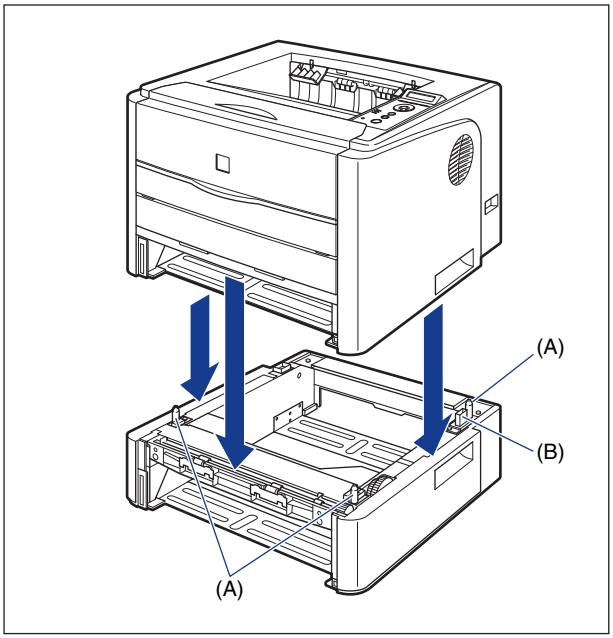




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## 3 When installing the printer unit on the paper feeder, gently set it down so that each surface of the printer unit is flush with the front or side surfaces of the paper feeder.

Also, match the positioning pins (A) and connector (B) when setting the printer unit.




IMPORTANT

If the printer unit cannot be placed on the paper feeder properly, lift the printer unit once, hold it horizontally, and place it again. If you try to set the printer unit forcefully without lifting it, the connector and positioning pins may be broken.

## 4 Set the paper cassette in the printer unit and paper feeder.

**CAUTION**

**When setting the paper cassette, be careful not to catch your fingers.**





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

**5** **Connect the interface cables except for the USB cable, and connect the power cord.**

**6** **Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**

**7** **Connect the USB cable.**

IMPORTANT

Be sure to turn the printer ON once when loading paper in the paper cassette for the first time after installing the paper feeder.

NOTE

- After installing the paper feeder, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain information about the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking [Get Device Status] in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet. If you cannot obtain the status of the optional accessories of the printer automatically, select the installed optional accessories from [Paper Source Options].
- Load paper in the paper feeder in the same manner as you load paper in Cassette 1. For more details, see "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-21.





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Installing the Optional Accessories

9

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the procedures for installing the optional accessories on the printer.


Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-2
Removing the Packing Materials . . . . . 9-2
Moving the Printer . . . . . 9-5
Installing the Paper Feeder . . . . . 9-9




Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode

This section describes the lists common to all the settings in the operation mode.

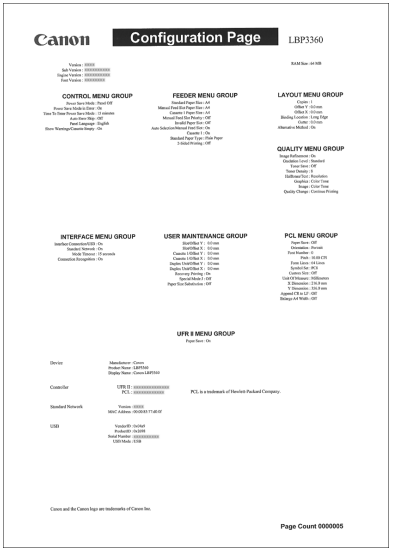
IMPORTANT

The following lists are samples. The contents may partially differ from the lists printed by your printer.

## Configuration Page

The capacity of the built-in RAM and the settings for the common printing environment are printed.

1. Make sure that the printer is online.
2. Press the (Utility) key to display the UTILITY menu.
3. Press [►] to display CONFIG.PAGE.
4. Press [OK] to output the page.





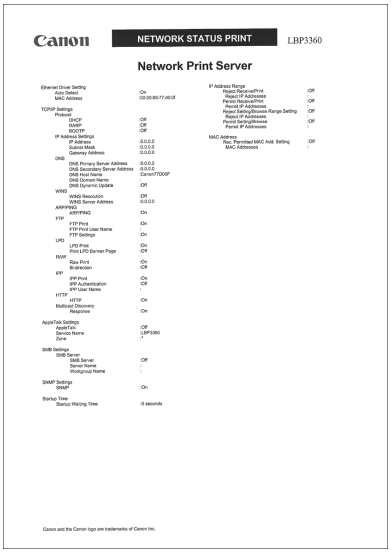



Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Network Status Print

Prints the version number of the print server equipped with this printer and the settings.

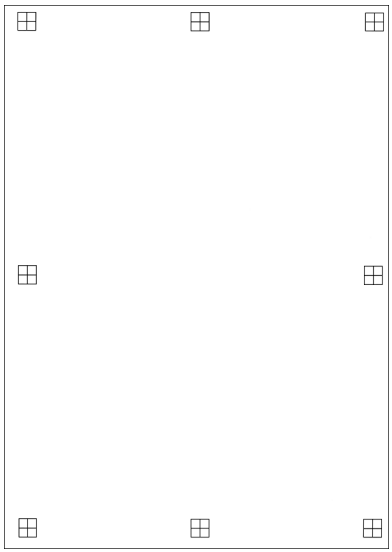
1. Make sure that the printer is online.
2. Press the (Utility) key to display the UTILITY menu.
3. Press [►] to display NW STATUS PRINT.
4. Press [OK] to output the page.




## Printing Position Adjustment Print

Displays the current printing positions of each paper source. Adjust the printing positions referring to this print. For more details, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-22.

1. Press the (Feeder Selection) key.
2. Select PAPER SOURCE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].
3. Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].
4. Make sure that the printer is online. If the printer is not online, press the (Online) key.
5. Press the (Utility) key to display the UTILITY menu.
6. Display PRNTPOSNPRINT using [►].
7. Press [OK] to output the page.







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode

This section describes the lists common to certain settings in the operation mode.

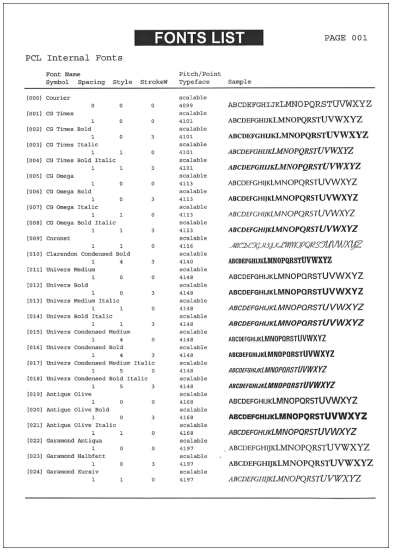
**IMPORTANT**

The following list is a sample. The contents may partially differ from the lists printed by your printer.

## PCL Fonts List

A list of the fonts that can be used in the PCL mode is printed.

1. Make sure that the printer is online.
2. Press the (Utility) key to display the UTILITY menu.
3. Press [►] to display PCL UTILITY.
4. Press [OK] to display Exclusive Utilities for PCL.
5. Press [►] to display FONTS LIST.
6. Press [OK] to output the page.



FONTS LIST PAGE 001

PCL Internal Fonts

| | Font Name<br>Symbol | Spacing | Style | StrokeW | Pitch/Point<br>Typeface | Sample |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| [000] | Courier | 0 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4099 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [001] | CG Times | 1 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4101 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [002] | CG Times Bold | 1 | 0 | 3 | scalable<br>4101 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [003] | CG Times Italic | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4101 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [004] | CG Times Bold Italic | 1 | 1 | 3 | scalable<br>4101 | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| [005] | CG Omega | 1 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4113 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [006] | CG Omega Bold | 1 | 0 | 3 | scalable<br>4113 | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| [007] | CG Omega Italic | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4113 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [008] | CG Omega Bold Italic | 1 | 1 | 3 | scalable<br>4113 | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| [009] | Coronet | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4116 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [010] | Clarendon Condensed Bold | 1 | 4 | 3 | scalable<br>4140 | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| [011] | Univers Medium | 1 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4148 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [012] | Univers Bold | 1 | 0 | 3 | scalable<br>4148 | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| [013] | Univers Medium Italic | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4148 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [014] | Univers Bold Italic | 1 | 1 | 3 | scalable<br>4148 | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| [015] | Univers Condensed Medium | 1 | 4 | 0 | scalable<br>4148 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [016] | Univers Condensed Bold | 1 | 4 | 3 | scalable<br>4148 | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| [017] | Univers Condensed Medium Italic | 1 | 5 | 0 | scalable<br>4148 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [018] | Univers Condensed Bold Italic | 1 | 5 | 3 | scalable<br>4148 | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| [019] | Antique Olive | 1 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4168 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [020] | Antique Olive Bold | 1 | 0 | 3 | scalable<br>4168 | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| [021] | Antique Olive Italic | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4168 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| [022] | Garamond Antique | 1 | 0 | 0 | scalable<br>4197 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [023] | Garamond Halbfett | 1 | 0 | 3 | scalable<br>4197 | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| [024] | Garamond Kursiv | 1 | 1 | 0 | scalable<br>4197 | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Typeface Samples

The fonts lists printed from the UTILITY menu are a comprehensive listing of all fonts currently available. The listing contains the names and print samples of the fonts stored on the printer.

## Scalable Fonts (PCL)

| | |
|---|---|
| Courier | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| CG Times | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| CG Times Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| CG Times Italic | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| CG Times Bold Italic | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| CG Omega | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| CG Omega Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| CG Omega Italic | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| CG Omega Bold Italic | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| Coronet | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| Clarendon Condensed Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| Univers Medium | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Univers Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| Univers Medium Italic | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| Univers Bold Italic | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| Univers Condensed Medium | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Univers Condensed Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| Univers Condensed Medium Italic | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| Univers Condensed Bold Italic | ***ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ*** |
| Antique Olive | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Antique Olive Bold | **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** |
| Antique Olive Italic | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |
| Garamond Antique | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Garamond Halbfett | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Garamond Kursiv | *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | |
|---|---|
| Garamond Kursiv Halbfeet | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Marigold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Albertus Medium | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Albertus Extra Bold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Arial | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Arial Bold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Arial Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Arial Bold Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Times New Roman | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Times New Roman Bold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Times New Roman Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Times New Roman Bold Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Symbol | ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙϑΚΛΜΝΟΠΘΡΣΤΥςΩΞΨΖ |
| Wingdings | ✌✍☝☜☞☟✊✋☺☹☠✈☼♦❄✞✠✡☪ |
| Courier Bold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Courier Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Courier Bold Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Letter Gothic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Letter Gothic Bold | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |
| Letter Gothic Italic | ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ |

## Bitmapped Fonts (PCL)

| | |
|---|---|
| Line Printer (10U) | ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñÑªº¿⌐¬½¼¡«» |
| Line Printer (8U) | ABCDEFGHIJKÀÂÈÊËÎÏ´ˆ˜¨ÛÛ£ |
| Line Printer (0N) | ABCDEFGHIJK¡¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬-®¯ |
| Line Printer (11U) | ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñÑõÕ¿ãÃÉĉ¡³¤ |
| Line Printer (12U) | ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñÑªº¿®¬½¼¡«» |
| Line Printer (1U) | ABCDEFGHIJK |
| Line Printer (2N) | ABCDEFGHIJKĄ˘Ł¤ĽŚ§¨ŠŞŤŹ-Žİ |
| Line Printer (5N) | ABCDEFGHIJK¡¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª«¬-®¯ |
| Line Printer (6N) | ABCDEFGHIJKĄĒĢĪĶ§ĻĐŠŤŽ-ŪŅ |
| Line Printer (9N) | ABCDEFGHIJK¡¢€€¥Š§š©ª«¬-®¯ |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Symbol Sets Supported

This section provides a list to the character code tables for the characters in each symbol set.

## Character Code Tables

### ■ Roman-8 (8U)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ¯ | â | Å | Á | Þ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | À | Ý | ê | î | Ã | þ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | Â | ý | ô | Ø | ã | · |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | È | ° | û | Æ | Đ | µ |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | Ê | Ç | á | å | ð | ¶ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | Ë | ç | é | í | Í | ¾ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Î | Ñ | ó | ø | Ì | — |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | Ï | ñ | ú | æ | Ó | ¼ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ´ | ¡ | à | Ä | Ò | ½ |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ` | ¿ | è | ì | Õ | ª |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ^ | ¤ | ò | Ö | õ | º |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | ¨ | £ | ù | Ü | Š | « |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | ~ | ¥ | ä | É | š | ■ |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | Ù | § | ë | ï | Ú | » |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | Û | *f* | ö | ß | Ÿ | ± |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | £ | ç | ü | Ô | ÿ | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Roman-9 (4U)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ¯ | â | Å | Á | Þ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | À | Ý | ê | î | Ã | þ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | Â | ý | ô | Ø | ã | · |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | È | ° | û | Æ | Đ | µ |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | Ê | Ç | á | å | ð | ¶ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | Ë | ç | é | í | Í | ¾ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Î | Ñ | ó | ø | Ì | – |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | Ï | ñ | ú | æ | Ó | ¼ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ´ | ¡ | à | Ä | Ò | ½ |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ` | ¿ | è | ì | Õ | ª |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ^ | € | ò | Ö | õ | º |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | ¨ | £ | ù | Ü | Š | « |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | ~ | ¥ | ä | É | š | ■ |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | Ù | § | ë | ï | Ú | » |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | Û | ƒ | ö | ß | Ÿ | ± |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | £ | ç | ü | Ô | ÿ | |

## ■ ISO 8859/1 Latin 1 (0N)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ° | À | Ð | à | ð |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | ¡ | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | ¢ | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | £ | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | ¥ | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | ¦ | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¨ | ¸ | È | Ø | è | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | © | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ª | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | « | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | ¬ | ¼ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | ½ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | ® | ¾ | Î | Þ | î | þ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | ¯ | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ ISO 8859/2 Latin 2 (2N)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ° | Ŕ | Đ | ŕ | đ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | Ą | ą | Á | Ń | á | ń |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | ˘ | ˛ | Â | Ň | â | ň |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | Ł | ł | Ă | Ó | ă | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | Ľ | ľ | Ĺ | Ő | Í | ő |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Ś | ś | Ć | Ö | ć | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | ˇ | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¨ | ¸ | Č | Ř | č | ř |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | Š | š | É | Ů | é | ů |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | Ş | ş | Ę | Ú | ę | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | Ť | ť | Ë | Ű | ë | ű |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | Ź | ź | Ě | Ü | ě | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | ˝ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | Ž | ž | Î | Ţ | î | ţ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | Ż | ż | Ď | ß | ď | ˙ |

## ■ ISO 8859/9 Latin 5 (5N)

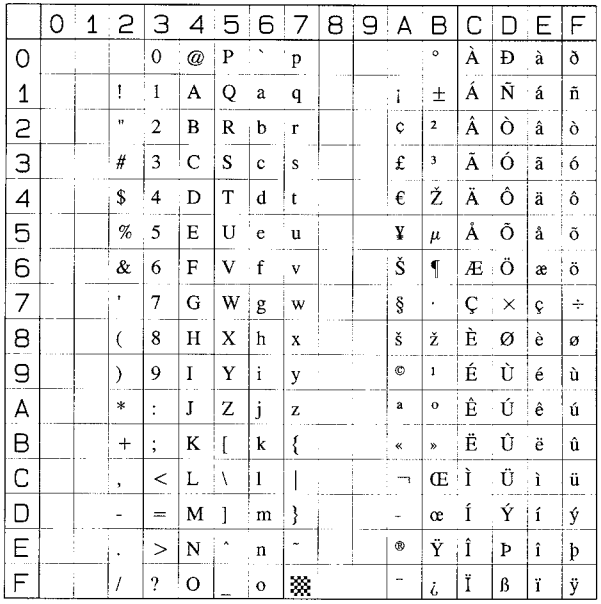
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ° | À | Ğ | à | ğ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | ¡ | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | ¢ | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | £ | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | ¥ | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | ¦ | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¨ | ¸ | È | Ø | è | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | © | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ª | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | « | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | ¬ | ¼ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | ½ | Í | İ | í | ı |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | ® | ¾ | Î | Ş | î | ş |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | ¯ | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |





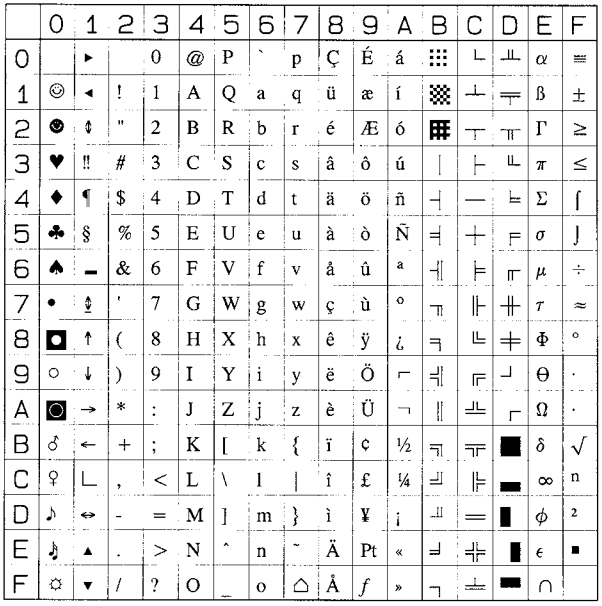
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ ISO 8859/15 Latin 9 (9N)



| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ° | À | Ð | à | ð |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | ¡ | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | ç | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | £ | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | € | Ž | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | ¥ | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Š | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | š | ž | È | Ø | è | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | © | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ª | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | « | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | ¬ | Œ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | œ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | ® | Ÿ | Î | Þ | î | þ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | ¯ | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |

## ■ PC-8, Code Page 437 (10U)



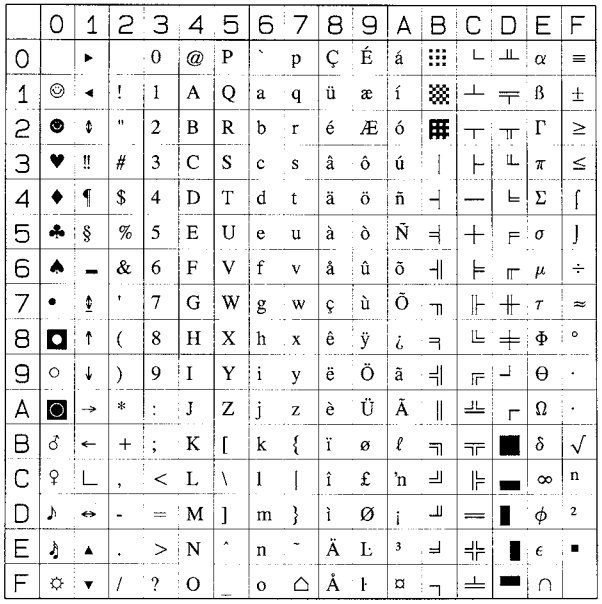
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | ▶ | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | Ç | É | á | ⁝⁝ | └ | ╨ | α | ≡ |
| 1 | ☺ | ◀ | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | ▩ | ┴ | ╤ | ß | ± |
| 2 | ☻ | ↕ | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Æ | ó | ▦ | ┬ | ╥ | Γ | ≥ |
| 3 | ♥ | ‼ | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | â | ô | ú | \| | ├ | ╙ | π | ≤ |
| 4 | ♦ | ¶ | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | ö | ñ | ┤ | — | ╘ | Σ | ⌠ |
| 5 | ♣ | § | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | Ñ | ╡ | ┼ | ╒ | σ | ⌡ |
| 6 | ♠ | ▬ | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | ª | ╢ | ╞ | ╓ | µ | ÷ |
| 7 | • | ↨ | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ç | ù | º | ╖ | ╟ | ╫ | τ | ≈ |
| 8 | ◘ | ↑ | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | ê | ÿ | ¿ | ╕ | ╚ | ╪ | Φ | ° |
| 9 | ○ | ↓ | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | ⌐ | ╣ | ╔ | ┘ | Θ | · |
| A | ◙ | → | * | : | J | Z | j | z | è | Ü | ¬ | ║ | ╩ | ┌ | Ω | · |
| B | ♂ | ← | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ï | ¢ | ½ | ╗ | ╦ | ▄ | δ | √ |
| C | ♀ | ∟ | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | î | £ | ¼ | ╝ | ╠ | ▬ | ∞ | n |
| D | ♪ | ↔ | - | = | M | ] | m | } | ì | ¥ | ¡ | ╜ | ═ | ▌ | φ | ² |
| E | ♫ | ▲ | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | Ä | Pt | « | ╛ | ╬ | ▐ | ε | ■ |
| F | ☼ | ▼ | / | ? | O | _ | o | ⌂ | Å | ƒ | » | ┐ | ╧ | ▀ | ∩ | |



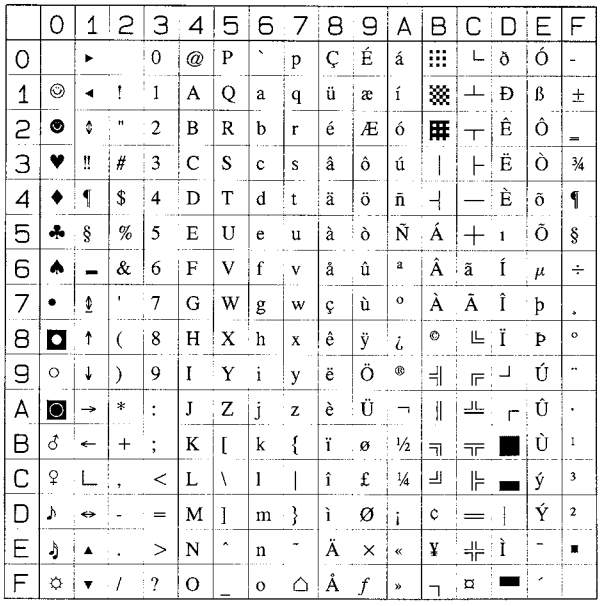


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PC-8 D/N, Danish/Norwegian (11U)



## ■ PC-850, Multilingual (12U)

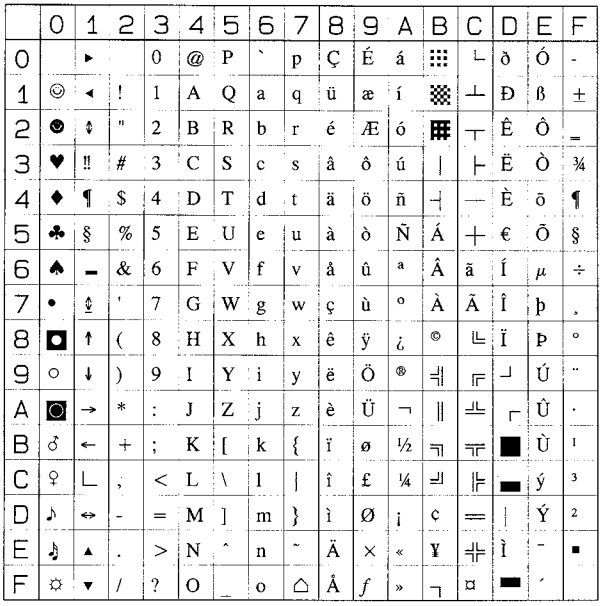




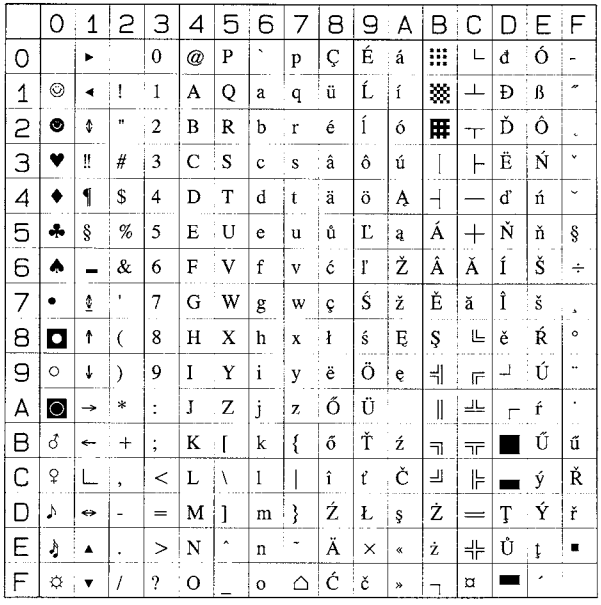


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PC-858, Multilingual with Euro (13U)



## ■ PC-852, Latin 2 (17U)

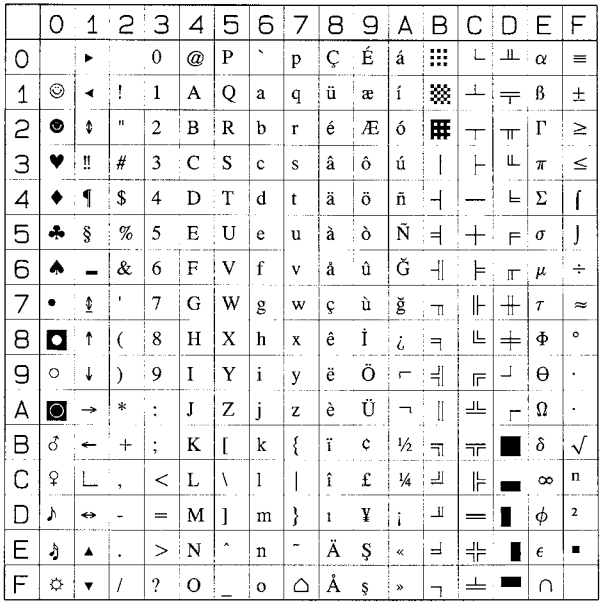




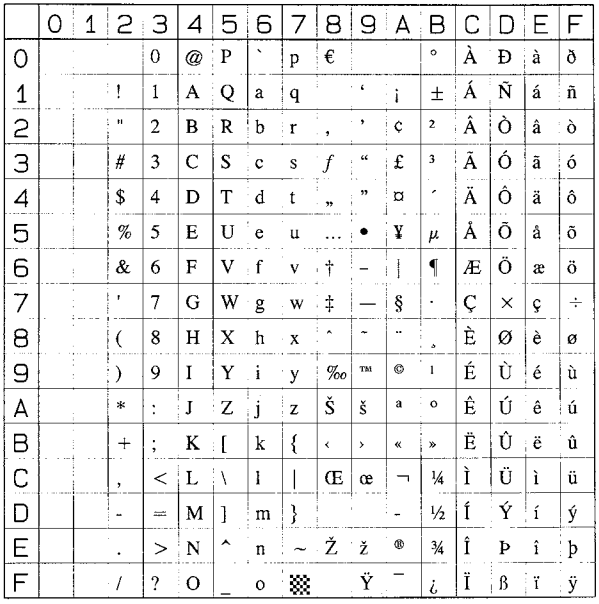


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PC-Turkish (9T)



## ■ Windows 3.1 Latin 1 (19U)







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Windows 3.1 Latin 2 (9E)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | € | | | ° | Ŕ | Đ | ŕ | đ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | ‘ | ˇ | ± | Á | Ń | á | ń |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | , | ’ | ˘ | ˛ | Â | Ň | â | ň |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | “ | Ł | ł | Ă | Ó | ă | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | „ | ” | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | … | • | Ą | µ | Ĺ | Ő | Í | ő |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | † | – | ¦ | ¶ | Ć | Ö | ć | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ‡ | — | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¨ | ¸ | Č | Ř | č | ř |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ‰ | ™ | © | ą | É | Ů | é | ů |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | Š | š | Ş | ş | Ę | Ú | ę | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ‹ | › | « | » | Ë | Ű | ë | ű |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | Ś | ś | ¬ | Ľ | Ě | Ü | ě | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | Ť | ť | - | ˝ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | Ž | ž | ® | ľ | Î | Ţ | î | ţ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▒ | Ź | ź | Ż | ż | Ď | ß | ď | ˙ |

## ■ Windows 3.1 Latin 5 (5T)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | € | | | ° | À | Ğ | à | ğ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | ‘ | ¡ | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | , | ’ | ç | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | *f* | “ | £ | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | „ | ” | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | … | • | ¥ | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | † | – | ¦ | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ‡ | — | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | ˆ | ~ | ¨ | ¸ | È | Ø | è | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ‰ | ™ | © | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | Š | š | ª | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ‹ | › | « | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | Œ | œ | ¬ | ¼ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | ½ | Í | İ | í | ı |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | ® | ¾ | Î | Ş | î | ş |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▒ | | Ÿ | ¯ | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ DeskTop (7J)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ‘ | p | | | | “ | – | ‹ | ª | ´ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | ¶ | ” | ± | › | º | ` |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | § | µ | × | « | æ | ˆ |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | † | ‰ | ÷ | » | Æ | ¨ |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | ‡ | • | ° | , | ð | ˜ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | © | ● | ′ | „ | Đ | ˇ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | ® | ○ | ″ | · | ij | ˘ |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | ™ | ○ | ¼ | ¡ | IJ | ˝ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | % | ■ | ½ | ¿ | ł | ° |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ç | ■ | ¾ | Pt | Ł | ˛ |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | – | ▫ | ¹ | ℓ | œ | ¯ |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | — | ▫ | ² | £ | Œ | ¸ |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | … | ' | ³ | ¥ | ø | ˛ |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | fi | ¬ | / | ¤ | Ø | · |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | fl | \| | | ƒ | þ | ı |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▒ | | | | = | | ß | Þ | |

## ■ PS Text (10J)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ‘ | p | | | | | | — | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | ¡ | – | ` | | Æ | æ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | ¢ | † | ´ | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | £ | ‡ | ˆ | | ª | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | / | · | ˜ | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | ¥ | | ¯ | | | ı |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | ƒ | ¶ | ˘ | | | |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | • | ˙ | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¤ | ¸ | ¨ | | Ł | ł |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ' | „ | | | Ø | ø |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | “ | ” | ° | | Œ | œ |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | « | » | ˛ | | º | ß |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | ‹ | … | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | › | ‰ | ˝ | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | fi | | ˛ | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | fl | ¿ | ˇ | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Ventura International (13J)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ‘ | p | | | „ | ‰ | â | Å | Á | Œ |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | À | “ | ê | î | Ã | œ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | Â | ” | ô | Ø | ã | ¶ |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | È | ° | û | Æ | | † |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | Ê | Ç | á | å | | ‡ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | Ë | ç | é | í | Í | — |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Î | Ñ | ó | ø | Ì | – |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | Ï | ñ | ú | æ | Ó | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | © | ¡ | à | Ä | Ò | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ® | ¿ | è | ì | Õ | ª |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ™ | ¤ | ò | Ö | õ | º |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | ‹ | £ | ù | Ü | Š | « |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | › | ¥ | ä | É | š | • |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | Ù | § | ë | ï | Ú | » |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | Û | *f* | ö | ß | Ÿ | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | | ç | ü | Ô | ÿ | … |

## ■ Ventura US (14J)

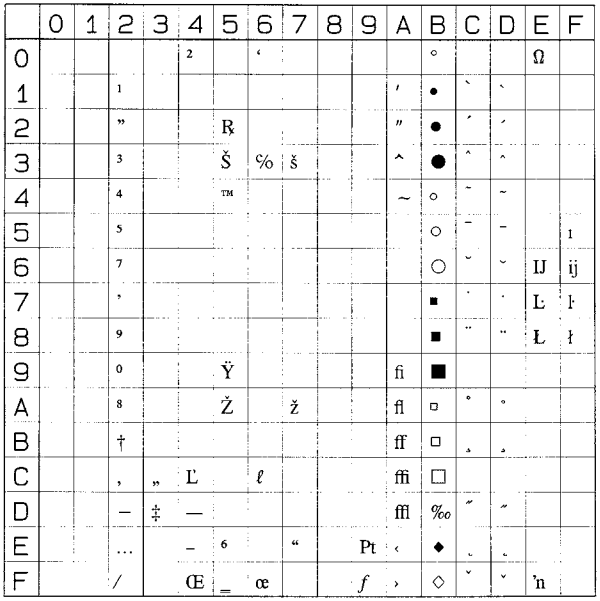
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ‘ | p | | | „ | ‰ | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | “ | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | ” | | | | ¶ |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | ° | | | | † |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | ‡ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | — |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | – |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | © | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | ® | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ™ | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | | | | | | • |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | | § | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | | ç | | | | … |



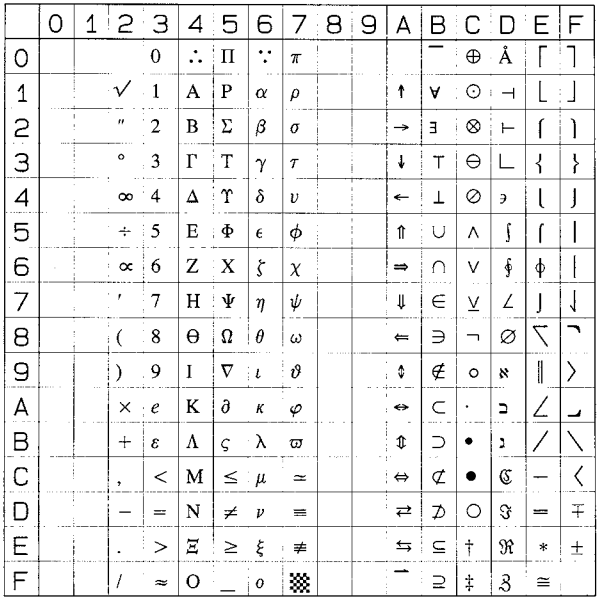


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Microsoft Publishing (6J)



## ■ Math-8 (8M)

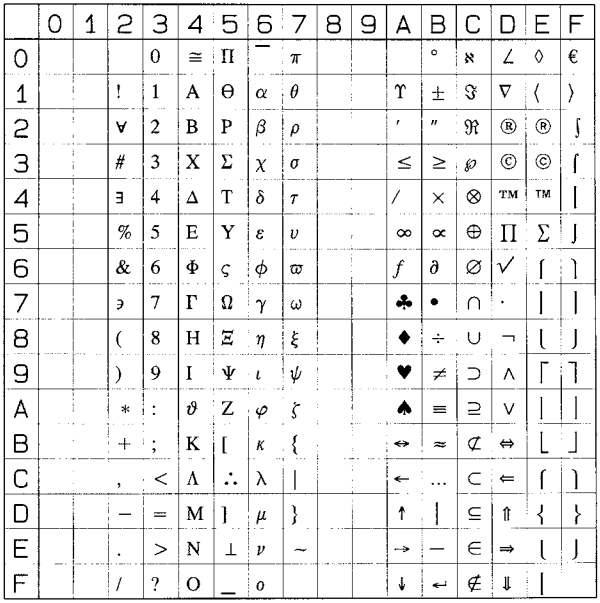




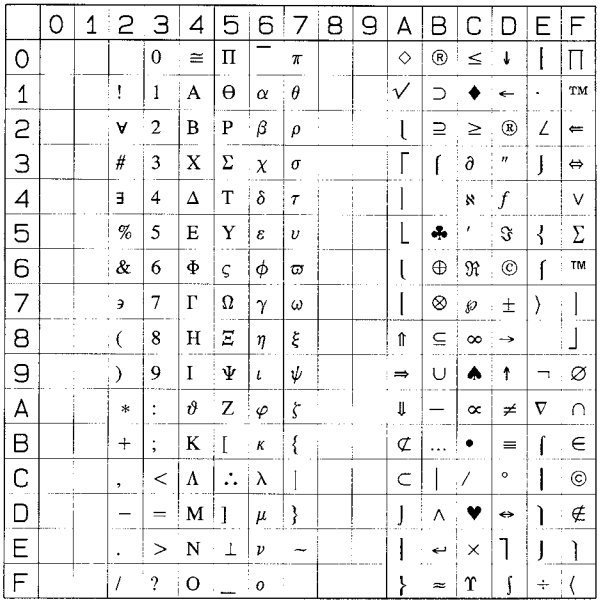


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PS Math (5M)



## ■ Ventura Math (6M)

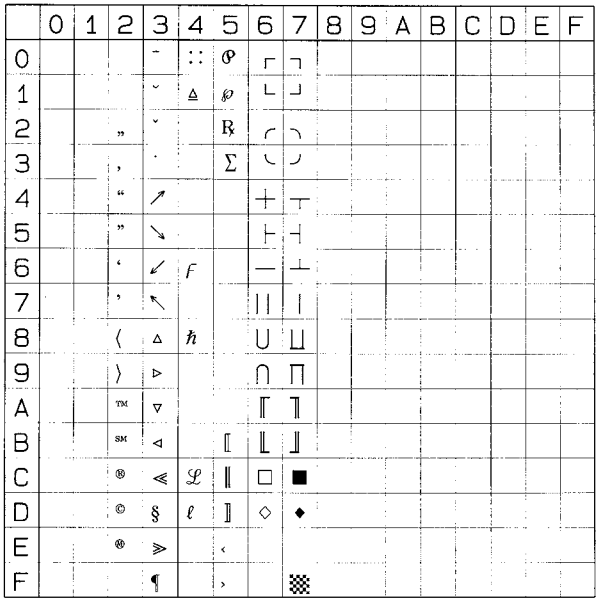






Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PI Font (15U)



## ■ Legal (1U)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ° | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | § | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | ® | l | ¶ | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | † | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | ¢ | N | © | n | ™ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Windows 3.0 Latin 1 (9U)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | € | | | ° | À | Đ | à | ð |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | ‘ | ¡ | ± | Á | Ñ | á | ñ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | ’ | ¢ | ² | Â | Ò | â | ò |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | £ | ³ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | ¥ | µ | Å | Õ | å | õ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | ¦ | ¶ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | · | Ç | × | ç | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | ¨ | ¸ | È | Ø | è | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | © | ¹ | É | Ù | é | ù |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | ª | º | Ê | Ú | ê | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | « | » | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | ¬ | ¼ | Ì | Ü | ì | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | ½ | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | ® | ¾ | Î | Þ | î | þ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▒ | | | ¯ | ¿ | Ï | ß | ï | ÿ |

## ■ ISO 8859/10 Latin 6 (6N)

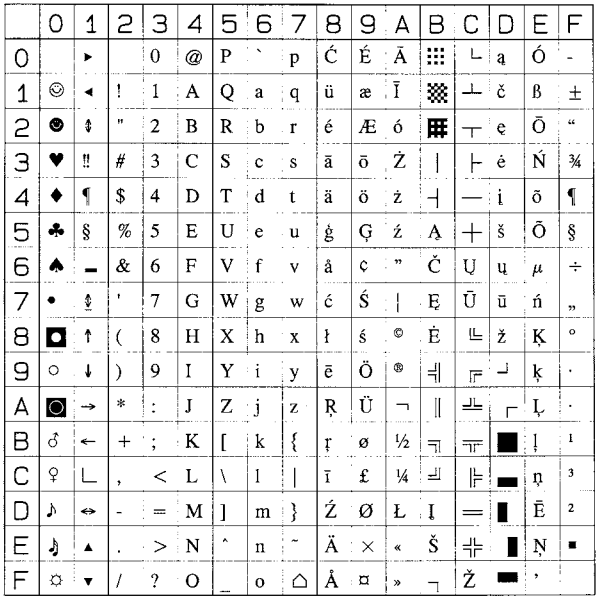
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | ° | Ā | Đ | ā | ð |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | Ą | ą | Á | Ņ | á | ņ |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | Ē | ē | Â | Õ | â | ō |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | Ģ | ģ | Ã | Ó | ã | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | Ī | ī | Ä | Ô | ä | ô |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | Ĩ | ĩ | Å | Ō | å | ō |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | Ķ | ķ | Æ | Ö | æ | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | § | · | Ļ | Ũ | ļ | ũ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | Ļ | ļ | Č | Ø | č | ø |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | Đ | đ | É | Ų | é | ų |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | Š | š | Ę | Ú | ę | ú |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | Ŧ | ŧ | Ë | Û | ë | û |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | Ž | ž | Ė | Ü | ė | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | - | — | Í | Ý | í | ý |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | Ū | ū | Î | Þ | î | þ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▒ | | | Ņ | ŋ | Ï | ß | ï | ĸ |



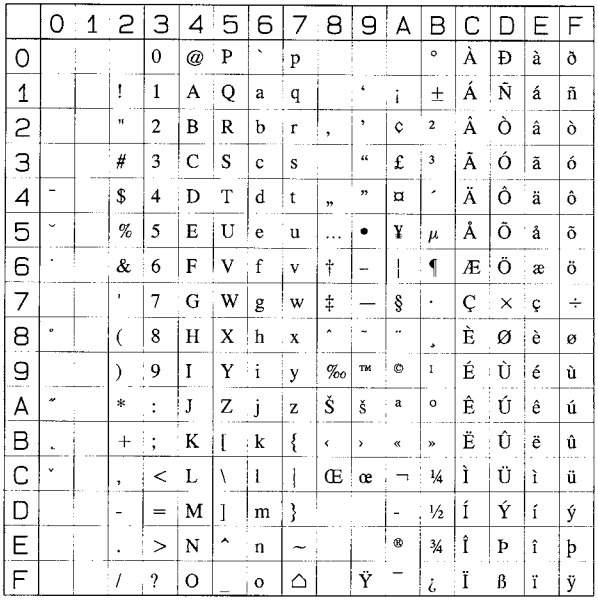


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PC-775 (26U)



## ■ PC-1004 (9J)







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Windows Baltic (19L)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | € | | | ° | Ą | Š | ą | š |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | ‘ | | ± | Į | Ń | į | ń |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | , | ’ | ¢ | ² | Ā | Ņ | ā | ņ |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | “ | £ | ³ | Ć | Ó | ć | ó |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | „ | ” | ¤ | ´ | Ä | Ō | ä | ō |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | … | • | | µ | Å | Õ | å | ō |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | † | – | ¦ | ¶ | Ę | Ö | ę | ö |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ‡ | — | § | · | Ē | × | ē | ÷ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | Ø | ø | Č | Ų | č | ų |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ‰ | ™ | © | ¹ | É | Ł | é | ł |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | Ŗ | ŗ | Ź | Ś | ź | ś |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ‹ | › | « | » | Ė | Ū | ė | ū |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | ¬ | ¼ | Ģ | Ü | ģ | ü |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | ¨ | ¯ | - | ½ | Ķ | Ż | ķ | ż |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | ˇ | ˛ | ® | ¾ | Ī | Ž | ī | ž |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | ˙ | | Æ | æ | Ļ | ß | ļ | ˙ |

## ■ MC Text (12J)

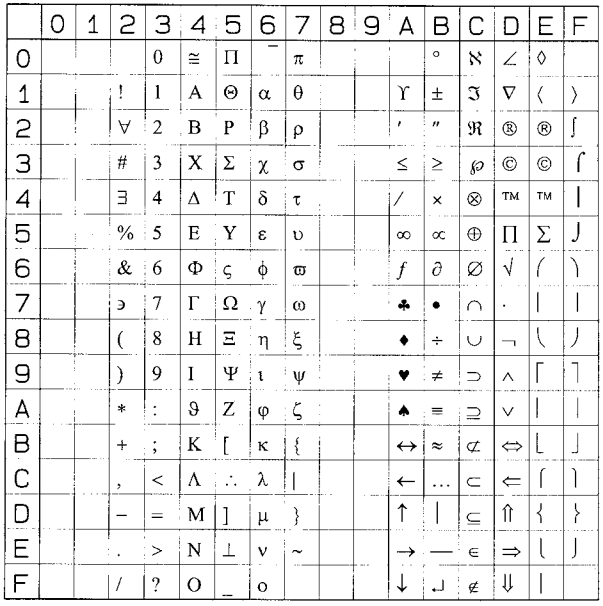
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | Ä | ê | † | ∞ | ¿ | - | ‡ | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | Å | ë | ° | ± | ¡ | — | · | Ò |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | Ç | í | ¢ | ≤ | ¬ | “ | ‚ | Ú |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | É | ì | £ | ≥ | √ | ” | „ | Û |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | Ñ | î | § | ¥ | *f* | ‘ | ‰ | Ù |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | Ö | ï | • | µ | ≈ | ’ | Â | ı |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | Ü | ñ | ¶ | ∂ | Δ | ÷ | Ê | ˆ |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | á | ó | ß | ∑ | «‘ | ◊ | Á | ˜ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | à | ò | ® | ∏ | » | ÿ | Ë | ¯ |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | â | ô | © | π | … | Ÿ | È | ˘ |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | ä | ö | ™ | ∫ | | ⁄ | Í | ˙ |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ã | õ | ´ | ª | À | € | Î | ° |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | å | ú | ¨ | º | Ã | ‹ | Ï | ¸ |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | ç | ù | ≠ | Ω | Õ | › | Ì | ˝ |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | é | û | Æ | æ | Œ | fi | Ó | ˛ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | è | ü | Ø | ø | œ | fl | Ô | ˇ |





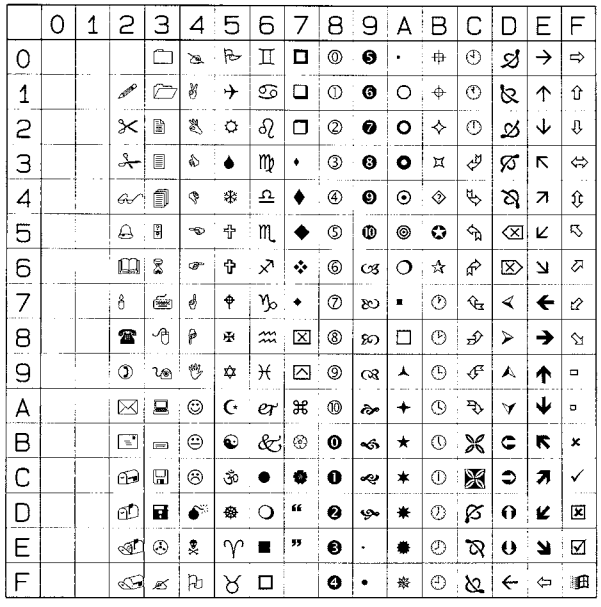
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Symbol (19M)



| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | ≅ | Π | ¯ | π | | | | ° | ℵ | ∠ | ◊ | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Θ | α | θ | | | ϒ | ± | ℑ | ∇ | 〈 | 〉 |
| 2 | | | ∀ | 2 | B | P | β | ρ | | | ′ | ″ | ℜ | ® | ® | ∫ |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | X | Σ | χ | σ | | | ≤ | ≥ | ℘ | © | © | ⌠ |
| 4 | | | ∃ | 4 | Δ | T | δ | τ | | | / | × | ⊗ | ™ | ™ | ⌡ |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | Y | ε | υ | | | ∞ | ∝ | ⊕ | ∏ | Σ | ⎛ |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | Φ | ς | ϕ | ϖ | | | ƒ | ∂ | ∅ | √ | ⎜ | ⎝ |
| 7 | | | ∍ | 7 | Γ | Ω | γ | ω | | | ♣ | • | ∩ | · | ⎜ | ⎜ |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | Ξ | η | ξ | | | ♦ | ÷ | ∪ | ¬ | ⎝ | ⎠ |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Ψ | ι | ψ | | | ♥ | ≠ | ⊃ | ∧ | ⎡ | ⎤ |
| A | | | * | : | ϑ | Z | φ | ζ | | | ♠ | ≡ | ⊇ | ∨ | ⎜ | ⎜ |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | κ | { | | | ↔ | ≈ | ⊄ | ⇔ | ⎣ | ⎦ |
| C | | | , | < | Λ | ∴ | λ | \| | | | ← | … | ⊂ | ⇐ | ⎡ | ⎤ |
| D | | | − | = | M | ] | μ | } | | | ↑ | \| | ⊆ | ⇑ | ⎧ | ⎫ |
| E | | | . | > | N | ⊥ | ν | ~ | | | → | — | ∈ | ⇒ | ⎩ | ⎭ |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | ο | | | | ↓ | ↵ | ∉ | ⇓ | ⎜ | |

## ■ Wingdings (579L)



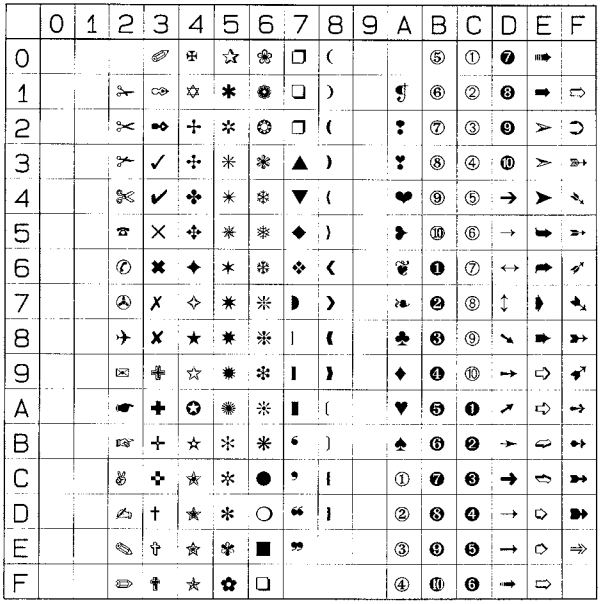
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 🗀 | 🖈 | 🖗 | ♊ | ■ | ⓪ | ❺ | · | ⌖ | 🕑 | 🖉 | → | ⇨ |
| 1 | | | 🖋 | 🗁 | 🖉 | ✈ | ♋ | ❑ | ① | ❻ | ○ | ⌖ | 🕑 | 🖎 | ↑ | ⇧ |
| 2 | | | ✂ | 🗎 | 🖊 | ☼ | ♌ | ❒ | ② | ❼ | ○ | ✧ | 🕑 | 🖉 | ↓ | ⇩ |
| 3 | | | ✂ | 🗏 | 🖋 | 🖲 | ♍ | ⬧ | ③ | ❽ | ○ | ⌑ | 🖗 | 🖉 | ↖ | ⇦ |
| 4 | | | 🖋 | 🗐 | 🖎 | ❄ | ♎ | ◆ | ④ | ❾ | ⊙ | ⌔ | 🖘 | 🖉 | ↗ | ⇳ |
| 5 | | | 🕭 | 🗄 | 🖏 | ✞ | ♏ | ◆ | ⑤ | ❿ | ◎ | ✪ | 🖘 | ⌫ | ↙ | ⇖ |
| 6 | | | 🕮 | 🗅 | 🖐 | ✞ | ♐ | ❖ | ⑥ | ➀ | ❍ | ☆ | 🖗 | ⌦ | ↘ | ⇗ |
| 7 | | | 🕯 | 🖃 | 🖐 | ✟ | ♑ | ⬧ | ⑦ | ➁ | ▪ | 🕐 | 🖘 | ⌫ | ➔ | ⇦ |
| 8 | | | ☎ | 🖑 | 🖐 | ✠ | ♒ | ☒ | ⑧ | ➂ | □ | 🕑 | 🖗 | ➢ | ➔ | ⇨ |
| 9 | | | 🕾 | 🖒 | 🖑 | ✡ | ♓ | ☒ | ⑨ | ➃ | ▫ | 🕒 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➚ | ▫ |
| A | | | 🖂 | 🖳 | ☺ | ☪ | ♈ | ⌘ | ⑩ | ➄ | ✦ | 🕓 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➘ | ▫ |
| B | | | 🗔 | 🖴 | ☹ | ☯ | & | ☸ | ⓿ | ➅ | ★ | 🕔 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➘ | × |
| C | | | 🖃 | 🖫 | ☹ | ॐ | ● | ✹ | ❶ | ➆ | ✶ | 🕕 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➚ | ✓ |
| D | | | 🖃 | 🖬 | 💣 | ☸ | ○ | “ | ❷ | ➇ | ✷ | 🕖 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➘ | ☒ |
| E | | | 🖃 | 🕹 | ☠ | ♈ | ■ | ” | ❸ | · | ✹ | 🕗 | 🖘 | ➢ | ➘ | ☑ |
| F | | | 🖃 | ✍ | ⚐ | ♉ | □ | | ❹ | • | ✵ | 🕘 | 🖘 | ← | ⇦ | 🖽 |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Dingbats (14L)



## ■ PC-860 Portugal (20U)

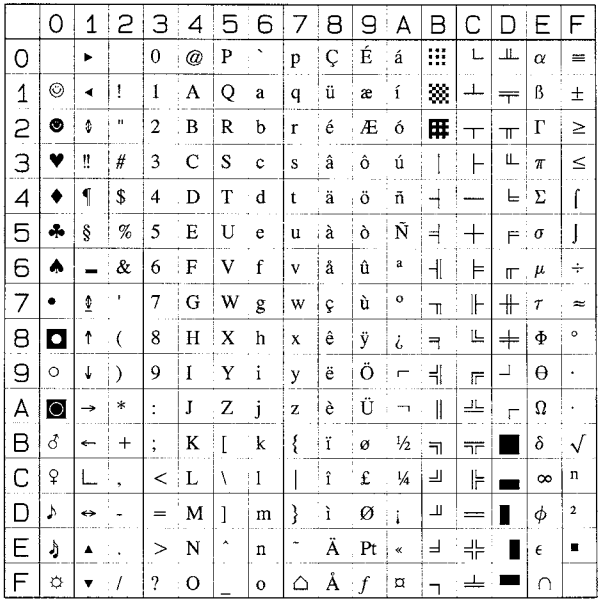
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | ▸ | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | Ç | É | á | ⁝⁝ | └ | ╨ | α | ≡ |
| 1 | ☺ | ◂ | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | À | í | ▒ | ┴ | ╤ | ß | ± |
| 2 | ☻ | ↕ | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | È | ó | ▓ | ┬ | ╥ | Γ | ≥ |
| 3 | ♥ | ‼ | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | â | ô | ú | │ | ├ | ╙ | π | ≤ |
| 4 | ♦ | ¶ | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ã | õ | ñ | ┤ | ─ | ╘ | Σ | ⌠ |
| 5 | ♣ | § | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | Ñ | ╡ | ┼ | ╒ | σ | ⌡ |
| 6 | ♠ | ▬ | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | Á | Ú | ª | ╢ | ╞ | ╓ | μ | ÷ |
| 7 | • | ↨ | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ç | ù | º | ╖ | ╟ | ╫ | τ | ≈ |
| 8 | ◘ | ↑ | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | ê | Ì | ¿ | ╕ | ╚ | ╪ | Φ | ° |
| 9 | ○ | ↓ | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | Ê | Õ | Ò | ╣ | ╔ | ┘ | Θ | · |
| A | ◙ | → | * | : | J | Z | j | z | è | Ü | ¬ | ║ | ╩ | ┌ | Ω | · |
| B | ♂ | ← | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | Í | ¢ | ½ | ╗ | ╦ | ■ | δ | √ |
| C | ♀ | ∟ | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | Ô | £ | ¼ | ╝ | ╠ | ▄ | ∞ | n |
| D | ♪ | ↔ | - | = | M | ] | m | } | ì | Ù | ¡ | ╜ | ═ | ▌ | φ | ² |
| E | ♫ | ▲ | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | Ã | Pt | « | ╛ | ╬ | ▐ | ε | ■ |
| F | ☼ | ▼ | / | ? | O | _ | o | ⌂ | Â | Ó | » | ┐ | ╧ | ▀ | ∩ | |





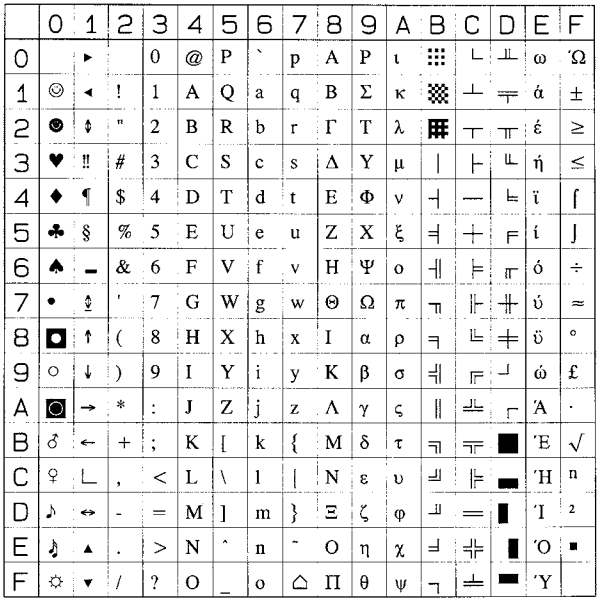
Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ PC-865 Norway (25U)



| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | ▶ | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | Ç | É | á | ⣿ | └ | ╨ | α | ≡ |
| 1 | ☺ | ◀ | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | ü | æ | í | ▒ | ┴ | ╤ | ß | ± |
| 2 | ☻ | ↕ | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | é | Æ | ó | ▦ | ┬ | ╥ | Γ | ≥ |
| 3 | ♥ | ‼ | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | â | ô | ú | ⎸ | ├ | ╙ | π | ≤ |
| 4 | ♦ | ¶ | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | ä | ö | ñ | ┤ | ─ | ╘ | Σ | ⌠ |
| 5 | ♣ | § | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | à | ò | Ñ | ╡ | ┼ | ╒ | σ | ⌡ |
| 6 | ♠ | ▬ | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | å | û | ª | ╢ | ╞ | ╓ | μ | ÷ |
| 7 | • | ↨ | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | ç | ù | º | ╖ | ╟ | ╫ | τ | ≈ |
| 8 | ◘ | ↑ | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | ê | ÿ | ¿ | ╕ | ╚ | ╪ | Φ | ° |
| 9 | ○ | ↓ | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | ë | Ö | ⌐ | ╣ | ╔ | ┘ | Θ | · |
| A | ◙ | → | * | : | J | Z | j | z | è | Ü | ¬ | ║ | ╩ | ┌ | Ω | · |
| B | ♂ | ← | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | ï | ø | ½ | ╗ | ╦ | ■ | δ | √ |
| C | ♀ | ∟ | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | î | £ | ¼ | ╝ | ╠ | ▄ | ∞ | n |
| D | ♪ | ↔ | - | = | M | ] | m | } | ì | Ø | ¡ | ╜ | ═ | ▌ | φ | ² |
| E | ♫ | ▲ | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | Ä | Pt | « | ╛ | ╬ | ▐ | ε | ■ |
| F | ☼ | ▼ | / | ? | O | _ | o | ⌂ | Å | ƒ | ¤ | ┐ | ╧ | ▀ | ∩ | |

## ■ PC-8 Greek Alternate Code Page 437 (14G)



| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | ▶ | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | A | P | ι | ⣿ | └ | ╨ | ω | ΄Ω |
| 1 | ☺ | ◀ | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | B | Σ | κ | ▒ | ┴ | ╤ | ά | ± |
| 2 | ☻ | ↕ | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | Γ | T | λ | ▦ | ┬ | ╥ | έ | ≥ |
| 3 | ♥ | ‼ | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | Δ | Y | μ | ⎸ | ├ | ╙ | ή | ≤ |
| 4 | ♦ | ¶ | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | E | Φ | ν | ┤ | ─ | ╘ | ϊ | ⌠ |
| 5 | ♣ | § | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | Z | X | ξ | ╡ | ┼ | ╒ | ί | ⌡ |
| 6 | ♠ | ▬ | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | H | Ψ | ο | ╢ | ╞ | ╓ | ό | ÷ |
| 7 | • | ↨ | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | Θ | Ω | π | ╖ | ╟ | ╫ | ύ | ≈ |
| 8 | ◘ | ↑ | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | I | α | ρ | ╕ | ╚ | ╪ | ϋ | ° |
| 9 | ○ | ↓ | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | K | β | σ | ╣ | ╔ | ┘ | ώ | £ |
| A | ◙ | → | * | : | J | Z | j | z | Λ | γ | ς | ║ | ╩ | ┌ | Ά | · |
| B | ♂ | ← | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | M | δ | τ | ╗ | ╦ | ■ | Έ | √ |
| C | ♀ | ∟ | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | N | ε | υ | ╝ | ╠ | ▄ | Ή | n |
| D | ♪ | ↔ | - | = | M | ] | m | } | Ξ | ζ | φ | ╜ | ═ | ▌ | Ί | ² |
| E | ♫ | ▲ | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | O | η | χ | ╛ | ╬ | ▐ | Ό | ■ |
| F | ☼ | ▼ | / | ? | O | _ | o | ⌂ | Π | θ | ψ | ┐ | ╧ | ▀ | Ύ | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

### ■ ISO 6: ASCII (0U)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ‘ | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | | | | | | |

## ISO Substitution Tables

### ■ ISO 4: United Kingdom (1E)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | £ | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ’ | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | [ | k | { | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | \ | l | \| | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | ] | m | } | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ¯ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | | | | | | | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ ISO 11: Swedish (0S)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | É | P | é | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | ¤ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | Ä | k | ä | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | Ö | l | ö | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | Å | m | å | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | Ü | n | ü | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |

## ■ ISO 60: Danish/Norwegian (0D)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | @ | P | ` | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | Æ | k | æ | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | Ø | l | ø | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | Å | m | å | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ¯ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ ISO 21: German (1G)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | § | P | ` | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | # | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | Ä | k | ä | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | Ö | l | ö | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | Ü | m | ü | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ß | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |

## ■ ISO 69: French (1F)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | à | P | μ | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | £ | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | ° | k | é | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | ç | l | ù | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | § | m | è | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ¨ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ ISO 15: Italian (0I)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | § | P | ù | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | £ | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | ° | k | à | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | ç | l | ò | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | é | m | è | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ì | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |

## ■ ISO 17: Spanish (2S)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | | | 0 | § | P | ` | p | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | ! | 1 | A | Q | a | q | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | " | 2 | B | R | b | r | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | £ | 3 | C | S | c | s | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | $ | 4 | D | T | d | t | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | % | 5 | E | U | e | u | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | & | 6 | F | V | f | v | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | ' | 7 | G | W | g | w | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | ( | 8 | H | X | h | x | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | ) | 9 | I | Y | i | y | | | | | | | | |
| A | | | * | : | J | Z | j | z | | | | | | | | |
| B | | | + | ; | K | ¡ | k | ° | | | | | | | | |
| C | | | , | < | L | Ñ | l | ñ | | | | | | | | |
| D | | | - | = | M | ¿ | m | ç | | | | | | | | |
| E | | | . | > | N | ^ | n | ~ | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | / | ? | O | _ | o | ▩ | | | | | | | | |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Specifications

## Hardware Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| **Type** | Desktop Page Printer |
| **Printing method** | Electrophoto Method (On-demand fixing) |
| **Resolution** | 600dpi |
| **Printing speed**<br>**Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m$^2$)** | When printing A4 continuously: 21 pages/min.<br>* Print speed may drop in stages depending on the paper size, paper type, print copies, and the settings of the fixing mode. (This is because the safety function that prevents damage caused by heat becomes active.) |
| **Warm-up time**<br>**(20°C (68°F))** | 0 second from standby mode<br>- Approximately 7 seconds from power ON<br>* May vary depending on the use conditions (such as the toner cartridge you are using, menu setting, availability of the optional accessories, and installation environment). |
| **First print time** | When printing A4 with the printing side facing down<br>Approx. 9 seconds<br>* May vary depending on the toner cartridge you are using or the output environment. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Paper size** | **Cassette 1** | - Standard sizes<br>A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive<br>- Custom sizes<br>When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm<br>When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 210.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 210.0 to 215.9 mm<br>Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (80 g/m$^2$) |
| | **Cassette 2 (Optional)** | |
| | **Manual feed slot** | - Standard sizes<br>A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope C5, Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5, Index Card, Statement, 16K<br>- Custom sizes<br>When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm<br>When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 127.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 215.9 mm<br>Paper capacity: 1 sheet |
| **Automatic 2-sided printing** | | A4, Legal, Letter |
| **Paper output** | | Face-down/Face-up |
| **Output capacity** | | Face-down output tray: approx. 125 sheets (80 g/m$^2$)<br>Face-up output slot: 1 sheet |
| **Noise (Declared noise emission in accordance with ISO 9296)** | | Lwad (declared A-weighted sound power level (1B = 10dB))<br>During standby: Background noise level<br>During operation: 6.34 B or less<br>Sound pressure level (Bystander position)<br>During standby: Background noise level<br>During operation: 50.9 dB (A) or less |
| **Operating environment (Printer unit only)** | | Operating environment temperature: 10 to 32.5°C (50 to 90.5°F)<br>Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation) |
| **Power supply** | | 220 -240 V (±10 %) 50/60 Hz (±2 Hz) |
| **Power consumption (at temperature of 20°C (68°F))** | | Average during operation: approx. 400 W*1<br>Average during standby: approx. 11 W*1<br>Average in the Panel Off mode (Power Save Mode 1): approx. 10 W*1<br>Average in the Deep Sleep mode (Power Save Mode 2): approx. 7 W*1<br>Maximum: 970 W*2 or less<br>*1 When the printer is with standard equipment<br>*2 However, the instantaneous peak on startup shall not be counted. |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Consumables** | **Toner cartridge** | Number of printable pages: approx. 2,500 pages*1 or 6,000 pages *1 (Canon Genuine Cartridge)<br>*1 When the pages are on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19752"*2 on printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting<br>*2 "ISO/IEC 19752" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that may contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization) |
| **Weight** | **Printer unit and included parts** | Printer<br>(excluding the toner cartridge).....approx. 12 kg<br>Toner cartridge.....approx. 0.8 kg |
| | **Consumables and optional accessories** | Toner cartridge (Canon Genuine Cartridge)<br>(Number of printable pages: approx. 2,500 pages)<br>.....approx.0.8 kg<br>Toner cartridge (Canon Genuine Cartridge)<br>(Number of printable pages: approx. 6,000 pages)<br>.....approx.1.0 kg<br>Paper feeder unit PF-35P<br>(including the cassette).....approx. 3.5 kg |

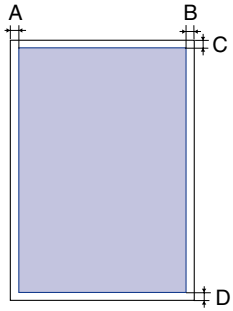
## Controller Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| **CPU** | R4000-333 MHz*<br>* The upper limit of the frequency range |
| **Memory (RAM) capacity** | 64 MB |
| **Host interface** | USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent) X 1<br>LAN connector (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX) X 1 |
| **User interface** | LCD 16 characters X 1 line<br>8 LED indicators<br>8 Operation keys |





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

<table>
<tr><td>Command language</td><td>PCL5e, PCL6, UFR II</td></tr>
<tr><td>Built-in fonts</td><td>PCL: 45 Scalable fonts, 10 Bitmap fonts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Printable area</td><td>PCL5e, PCL6<br>The printable areas are as follows.<br> 

<table>
<tr><th>Paper Size</th><th>A: Left Edge</th><th>B: Right Edge</th><th>C: Top Edge</th><th>D: Bottom Edge</th></tr>
<tr><td>A4</td><td>6.1</td><td>6.1</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>B5</td><td>7.4</td><td>7.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>A5</td><td>7.0</td><td>7.0</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Legal</td><td>6.4</td><td>6.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Letter</td><td>6.4</td><td>6.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Executive</td><td>7.4</td><td>7.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Statement</td><td>6.4</td><td>6.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>16K</td><td>6.4</td><td>6.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Custom Size</td><td>6.4</td><td>6.4</td><td>5.0</td><td>5.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Index Card</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Envelope</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td><td>10.0</td></tr>
</table>
(Unit: mm)<br><br>UFR II<br>Data cannot be printed within a 5 mm margin on the top and bottom sides and 4 mm margin on the right and left sides of the paper. (For envelopes, 10 mm margin on all sides)<br>* If you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in UFR II Printer Driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. However, the data may be printed with the edges missing when a document with no margins is printed, even if the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box is selected. In this case, specify the scaling factor in UFR II Printer Driver to print smaller so that any data on the document will not miss, and then print again.</td></tr>
</table>



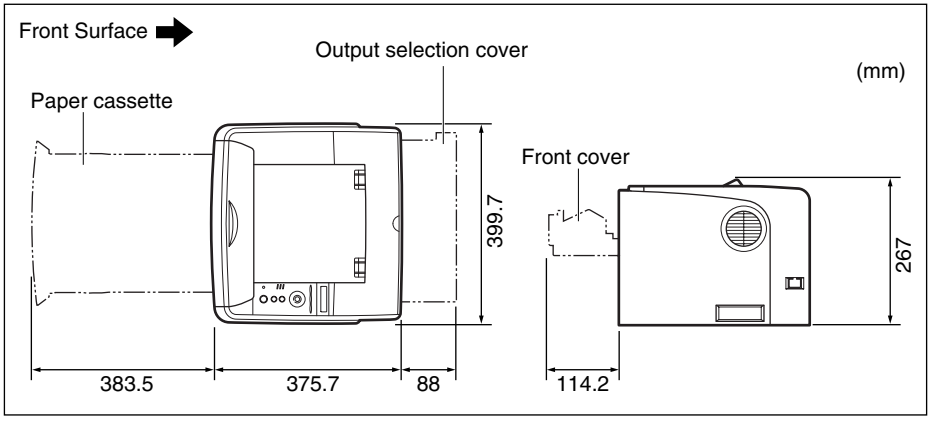


Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

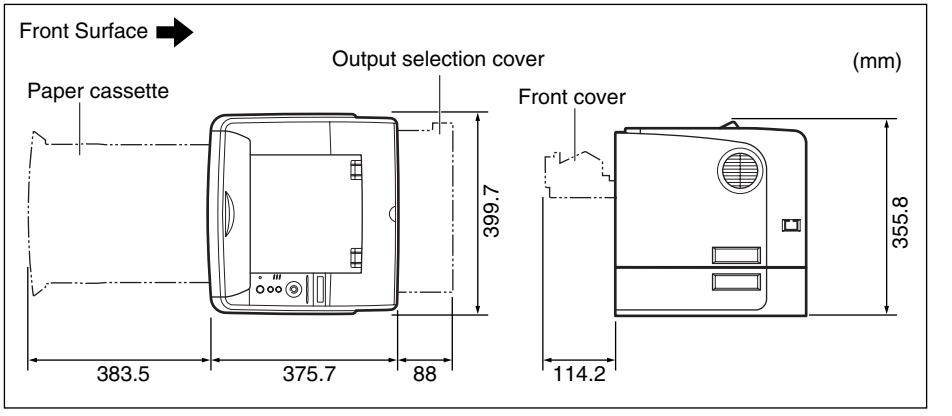
# Dimensions of Each Part

## ■ Printer unit

• Standard state




• State with the paper feeder installed

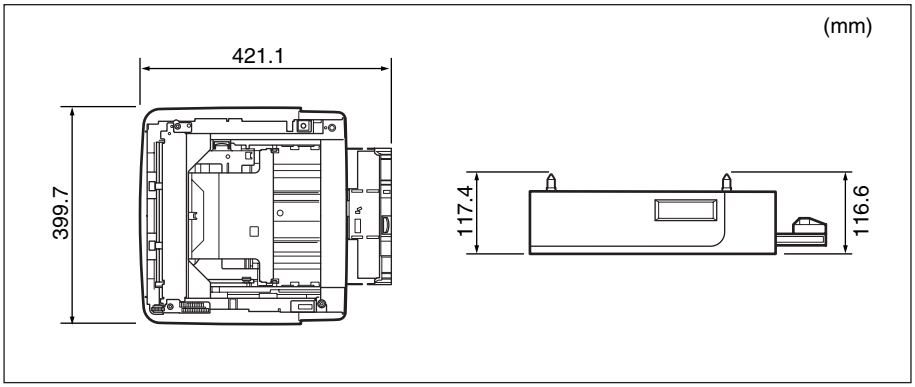







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## ■ Paper feeder unit PF-35P








Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# Index

## Numerics

2-SIDED PRINT., 6-18, 6-44
2-sided Printing, 4-48
  Loading Paper, 4-51, 4-54
  Paper Size Switch Lever, 4-49

## A

ADJ.START POS., 6-30
Adjusting the Print Density, 7-18
Adjusting the Printing Position, 7-22
ALT.METHOD, 6-22
APPEND CR TO LF, 6-35
APPLETALK, 6-28
AUTO ERROR SKIP, 6-11, 8-27
AUTO SELECTION, 6-16

## B

BIND.LOCATION, 6-20
Bitmapped Fonts (PCL), 10-6

## C

Cancel Job, 3-7
Cancel Job Key, 1-10, 5-5
CANCEL JOB Menu, 5-14
Canceling a Job, 3-6
Cassette 1, 4-11
Cassette 2, 4-11
CASSETTE1 SIZE, 4-19, 6-13, 6-44
CASSETTE2 SIZE, 4-19, 6-14, 6-44
Character Code Tables, 10-7
CLEANING, 6-38
Cleaning the Fixing Roller, 7-19
Clearing Paper Jams, 8-8
Condensation, 7-17
CONFIG.PAGE, 6-38
Configuration Page, 2-30, 10-2
CONNECT.RECOG., 6-29
CONTROL MENU Options, 6-2
Control Panel, 1-9
COPIES, 6-19
CUSTOM SIZE, 6-34

## D

DENSITY, 6-24
Dimensions, 10-34
Display, 1-11
  Changing the Language, 2-33
Duplex Unit Cover, 1-8

## E

ENLRG A4 WIDTH, 6-36
Envelopes, 4-5
Environments, 2-3
  Installation Environment, 2-3
  Installation Space, 2-5
Error Message, 8-27
Error Skip, 8-27
ETHERNET DRIVER, 6-29

## F

Face-down Output Tray, 1-6, 4-15
Face-up Output Slot, 1-8, 4-16
FEEDER MENU Options, 6-2
Feeder Selection Key, 1-10, 5-6
FONT NUMBER, 6-33





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

FONTS LIST, 6-38
Foot Positions, 2-6
Forced Output, 3-6
FORM FEED, 6-41
FORM LINES, 6-33
Front Cover, 1-7

## G

GRADATION LEVEL, 6-23
GUTTER, 6-21

## H

HALFTONES, 6-24
Handling
  Manual Feed Slot, 4-13
  Paper Cassette, 4-13
  Printer, 7-37
  Toner Cartridge, 7-14
HARD RESET, 6-41
Hard Reset, 3-9
Heavy Paper, 4-4
How to View the Display, 5-7

## I

I/F CONNECTION, 6-25
IMGE REFINEMENT, 6-23
Index Card, 4-4
INIT.N/W SET., 6-29
Installation Environment, 2-3
Installation Procedure, 2-2
Installation Requirements, 2-4
Installation Space, 2-5
INTERFACE MENU Options, 6-4
INVLDPAPER SLOT, 6-16
ISO Substitution Tables, 10-26

## J

Job Indicator, 1-9
Job Key, 1-9, 5-6
JOB LOG LIST, 6-40
JOB Menu, 5-12, 6-8

## K

Keys, 5-5

## L

Labels, 4-4
LAN, 2-23
LAN Connector, 1-7
Laser Beam, xx
LAYOUT MENU Options, 6-3
Lift Handles, 1-7

## M

Manual Feed Slot, 1-7, 4-37
  Handling, 4-13
  Loading Paper, 4-38
  Paper Size Setting, 4-46
Manual Feed Slot Cover, 1-7
Menu Categories, 5-3
Menu Functions, 5-2
Menu Functions and Menu Operation, 5-9
Message, 8-27
Message Indicator, 1-9
MODE TIMEOUT, 6-26

## N

NETWORK MENU, 6-27
Network Status Print, 10-3
NW STATUS PRINT, 6-39





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

# O


Offline, 3-5
OFFSET X, 6-19
OFFSET Y, 6-19
[OK] Key, 1-9, 5-6
Online, 3-4
Online Indicator, 1-10
Online Key, 1-10, 5-5
Optional Accessories, 1-12
ORIENTATION, 6-32
Output Selection Cover, 1-8
Output Trays, 4-15
  Paper Capacity, 4-17
  Selection, 4-18
Outputting Data (Forced Output), 3-6


# P


Package Contents, 2-8
Packing Materials, 2-14
PANEL LANGUAGE, 6-12
Paper, 4-2
  Print Area, 4-7
  Storage, 4-9
  Unusable Paper, 4-8
  Usable Paper, 4-2
Paper Cassette, 1-7, 4-19
  Handling, 4-13
  Loading Paper, 4-21
  Paper Size Setting, 4-34
Paper Feed Roller, 8-20
Paper Feeder, 1-12
  Installation, 9-2, 9-9
  Removing the Packing Materials, 9-2
Paper Guides, 1-7
Paper Jams, 8-4
PAPER SAVE (PCL SETUP), 6-32
PAPER SAVE (UFR II SETUP), 6-37
Paper Size, 4-2
  Abbreviations of Paper Sizes, 4-6
Paper Size Switch Lever, 1-8
PAPER SOURCE, 6-43
Paper Source, 4-11
  Paper Capacity, 4-12
  Selection, 4-12
Paper Source Indicators, 1-10
Paper Type, 4-3
Parts and Their Functions, 1-6
PCL Fonts List, 10-4
PCL SETUP Options, 6-7
PCL UTILITY, 6-38
Peripheral Space Required, 2-5
PITCH, 6-33
Plain Paper, 4-4
POINT SIZE, 6-33
Power Cord, 2-21
Power Indicator, 1-10
POWER SAVE MODE, 6-10
POWER SAVE TIME, 6-11
Power Saving, 3-2
Power Socket, 1-8
Power Supply
  Connecting the Power Cord, 2-21
  Problems, 8-39
  Turning the Printer OFF, 2-34
  Turning the Printer ON, 2-28
Power Supply Requirements, 2-4
Power Switch, 1-7
Pressure Release Levers, 1-7
Print Quality Problems, 8-46
Printer
  Carrying to the Installation Site, 2-10
  Checking the Operations, 2-30
  Cleaning, 7-28
  Handling, 7-37
  Moving, 7-31
  Operation Problems, 8-39
Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation, 5-4
Printing Position Adjustment Print, 10-3
Printing Problems, 8-2
PRNTPOSNPRINT, 6-39
Problems with the Printout Results, 8-42
PWR SAVE IN ERR, 6-11







Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

## Q

QUALITY CHANGE, 6-25
QUALITY MENU Options, 6-3

## R

Rating Label, 1-8
Ready Indicator, 1-10
RECVRY PRINTING, 6-30
REMOTE UI SET., 6-29
REPORTLOG LST, 6-40
Reset Key, 1-10, 5-6
RESET Menu, 5-13, 6-8
Rubber Pads, 4-14

## S

Scalable Fonts (PCL), 10-5
SELECT FEEDER Menu, 5-15, 6-9
Serial No. Label, 1-7
Service Call Display, 8-37
Setting Items, 6-2
Setting Priority, 5-3
Settings Key, 1-9, 5-6
SETUP Menu, 5-9, 6-2
SETUP Menu Initialization, 5-17
SHOW WARNINGS, 6-12
SLOT PAPER SIZE, 4-37, 6-12, 6-44
SLOT PRIORITY, 6-15
SMB, 6-28
SNMP, 6-28
SOFT RESET, 6-41
Soft Reset, 3-8
SPECIAL MODE J, 6-31
Specifications, 10-30
  Controller, 10-32
  Hardware, 10-30
  Software, 10-33
START WAIT TIME, 6-28
STD PAPER SIZE, 4-19, 4-37, 6-15
STD PAPER TYPE, 4-19, 4-37, 6-17
Storing Printouts, 4-10
SUBSTITUTE SIZE, 6-31
SYMBOL SET, 6-34
Symbol Sets Supported, 10-7

## T

TCP/IP SETTINGS, 6-27
Temperature/Humidity Conditions, 2-3
Toner Cartridge
  Before Replacing, 7-2
  Handling, 7-14
  Replacement, 7-2, 7-7
  Storage, 7-16
Toner Cartridge Guide, 1-8
TONER SAVE, 6-24
Transparencies, 4-4
Transport Guide, 1-8
Typeface Samples, 10-5

## U

UFR II SETUP Options, 6-7
UNIT OF MEASURE, 6-34
USB, 2-25
USB Connector, 1-7
USER MAIN. Options, 6-6
User Manual CD-ROM Menu, 1-4
Utility Key, 1-10, 5-6
UTILITY Menu, 5-11, 6-8

## V

Ventilation Slots, 1-7

## X

X DIMENSION, 6-34

## Y

Y DIMENSION, 6-35





Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

Canon

**CANON INC.**
30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan
**CANON U.S.A., INC.**
One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.
**CANON CANADA INC.**
6390 Dixie Road Mississauga, Ontario L5T 1P7, Canada
**CANON EUROPA N.V.**
Bovenkerkerweg 59-61 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands
**CANON FRANCE S.A.S.**
17, quai du Président Paul Doumer 92414 Courbevoie Cedex, France
**CANON COMMUNICATION & IMAGE FRANCE S.A.S.**
12, rue de l'Industrie 92414 Courbevoie Cedex, France
**CANON (U.K.) LTD.**
Woodhatch, Reigate, Surrey, RH2 8BF, United Kingdom
**CANON DEUTSCHLAND GmbH**
Europark Fichtenhain A10, 47807 Krefeld, Germany
**CANON ITALIA S.p.A.**
Via Milano, 8 20097 San Donato Milanese (MI) Italy
**CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.**
703 Waterford Way Suite 400 Miami, Florida 33126 U.S.A.
**CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD**
1 Thomas Holt Drive, North Ryde, Sydney, N.S.W. 2113, Australia
**CANON CHINA CO., LTD**
15F Jinbao Building No.89 Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100005, China
**CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.**
1 HarbourFront Avenue #04-01 Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632

Downloaded from ManualsPrinter.com Manuals

USRM1-0334 (01)

© CANON INC. 2006